

DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE  
STANDARD TERMS AND CONDITIONS



January 2013

**DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE**  
**FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE STANDARD TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

**Table of Contents**

PREFACE.....	4
A. FINANCIAL REQUIREMENTS.....	4
.01 Financial Reports .....	4
.02 Award Payments .....	4
.03 Federal and Non-Federal Sharing .....	5
.04 Budget Changes and Transfer of Funds among Categories.....	6
.05 Indirect Costs and Facilities and Administrative Costs .....	6
.06 Incurring Costs or Obligating Federal Funds beyond the Expiration Date .....	9
.07 Tax Refunds .....	9
B. PROGRAMMATIC REQUIREMENTS .....	9
.01 Performance (Technical) Reports .....	9
.02 Unsatisfactory Performance.....	10
.03 Programmatic Changes .....	10
.04 Other Federal Awards with Similar Programmatic Activities.....	10
.05 Non-Compliance with Award Provisions .....	10
.06 Prohibition against Assignment by the Recipient.....	10
.07 Disclaimer Provisions .....	11
C. NON-DISCRIMINATION REQUIREMENTS.....	11
.01 Statutory Provisions.....	11
.02 Other Provisions.....	12
.03 Title VII Exemption for Religious Organizations .....	13
D. AUDITS .....	13
.01 Organization-Wide, Program-Specific, and Project Audits.....	13
.02 Audit Resolution Process.....	14
E. DEBTS .....	15
.01 Payment of Debts Owed the Federal Government .....	15
.02 Late Payment Charges .....	16
.03 Barring Delinquent Federal Debtors from Obtaining Federal Loans or Loan Insurance Guarantees.....	16

.04	Effect of Judgment Lien on Eligibility for Federal Grants, Loans, or Programs.....	16
F.	GOVERNMENTWIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION.....	16
G.	DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE.....	17
H.	LOBBYING RESTRICTIONS .....	17
.01	Statutory Provisions .....	17
.02	Disclosure of Lobbying Activities .....	17
I.	CODES OF CONDUCT AND SUBAWARD, CONTRACT, AND SUBCONTRACT PROVISIONS .....	17
.01	Code of Conduct for Recipients.....	17
.02	Applicability of Award Provisions to Subrecipients .....	18
.03	Competition and Codes of Conduct for Subawards .....	18
.04	Applicability of Provisions to Subawards, Contracts, and Subcontracts.....	19
.05	Small Businesses, Minority Business Enterprises and Women’s Business Enterprises	20
.06	Subaward and/or Contract to a Federal Agency .....	20
J.	PROPERTY.....	20
.01	Standards.....	20
.02	Real and Personal Property .....	21
K.	ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS .....	21
.01	The National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. § 4321 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	22
.02	National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. § 470 <i>et seq.</i> ) .....	22
.03	Executive Order 11988 (“Floodplain Management”) and Executive Order 11990 (“Protection of Wetlands”) .....	23
.04	Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. § 7401 <i>et seq.</i> ), Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. § 1251 <i>et seq.</i> ) (Clean Water Act), and Executive Order 11738 (“Providing for administration of the Clean Air Act and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act with respect to Federal contracts, grants or loans”).....	23
.05	The Flood Disaster Protection Act (42 U.S.C. § 4002 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	23
.06	The Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. § 1531 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	23
.07	The Coastal Zone Management Act (16 U.S.C. § 1451 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	23
.08	The Coastal Barriers Resources Act (16 U.S.C. § 3501 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	23
.09	The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act (16 U.S.C. § 1271 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	23
.10	The Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 300f <i>et seq.</i> ).....	24
.11	The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (42 U.S.C. § 6901 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	24

.12	The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (Superfund) (42 U.S.C. § 9601 <i>et seq.</i> ) and the Community Environmental Response Facilitation Act (41 U.S.C. § 11001 <i>et seq.</i> ).....	24
.13	Executive Order 12898 (“Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low Income Populations”).....	24
L.	MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS.....	24
.01	Criminal and Prohibited Activities .....	24
.02	Foreign Travel.....	25
.03	American-Made Equipment and Products .....	26
.04	Intellectual Property Rights .....	26
.05	Increasing Seat Belt Use in the United States.....	28
.06	Research Involving Human Subjects .....	28
.07	Federal Employee Expenses .....	29
.08	Minority Serving Institutions Initiative .....	29
.09	Research Misconduct .....	29
.10	Publications, Videos and Acknowledgment of Sponsorship .....	30
.11	Care and Use of Live Vertebrate Animals .....	30
.12	Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12.....	31
.13	Compliance with Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security Export Administration Regulations .....	32
.14	The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (22 U.S.C. 7104(g)), as amended, and the implementing regulations at 2 C.F.R. part 175 .....	33
.15	The Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 (Pub. L. No. 109-282, 31 USCA § 6101 Note).....	35
.16	Federal Financial Assistance Planning During a Funding Hiatus or Government Shutdown .....	40
	APPENDIX A: Summary of Changes to the 2008 DOC Financial Assistance Standard Terms and Conditions.....	42

## **PREFACE**

The recipient and any subrecipients must, in addition to the assurances made as part of the application, comply and require each of its contractors and subcontractors employed in the completion of the project to comply with all applicable statutes, regulations, executive orders (E.O.s), Office of Management and Budget (OMB) circulars, terms and conditions, and approved applications.

This award is subject to the laws and regulations of the United States. Any inconsistency or conflict in terms and conditions specified in the award will be resolved according to the following order of precedence: public laws, regulations, applicable notices published in the *Federal Register*, E.O.s, OMB circulars, Department of Commerce (DOC) Financial Assistance Standard Terms and Conditions, agency standard award conditions (if any), and special award conditions. Special award conditions may amend or take precedence over DOC standard terms and conditions, on a case-by-case basis, when allowed by the DOC standard term and condition.

Some of the DOC terms and conditions herein contain, by reference or substance, a summary of the pertinent statutes, or regulations published in the *Federal Register* or Code of Federal Regulations (C.F.R.), E.O.s, OMB circulars or the assurances (Forms SF-424B and SF-424D). To the extent that it is a summary, such provision is not in derogation of, or an amendment to, any such statute, regulation, E.O., OMB circular, or assurance.

## **A. FINANCIAL REQUIREMENTS**

### **.01 Financial Reports**

- a. The recipient shall submit a “Federal Financial Report” (Form SF-425) on a semi-annual basis for the periods ending March 31 and September 30, or any portion thereof, unless otherwise specified in a special award condition. Reports are due no later than 30 days following the end of each reporting period. A final Form SF-425 shall be submitted within 90 days after the expiration of the project period.
- b. The reports must be submitted to the Grants Officer electronically, or in hard copy (no more than an original and two copies), in accordance with the award conditions.

### **.02 Award Payments**

- a. Consistent with 15 C.F.R. §§ 14.22 and 24.21, the advance method of payment shall be authorized unless otherwise specified in a special award condition. The Grants Officer determines the appropriate method of payment. Payments will be made through electronic funds transfers directly to the recipient’s bank account and in accordance with the requirements of the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996 and the Cash Management Improvement Act. The DOC Award Number must be included on all payment-related correspondence, information, and forms.

- b. When the “Request for Advance or Reimbursement” (Form SF-270) is used to request payment, the recipient shall submit the request no more frequently than monthly, and advances shall be approved for periods to cover only expenses anticipated over the next 30 days. The recipient must complete Forms SF-3881, “ACH Vendor Miscellaneous Payment Enrollment Form,” and SF-270 and submit forms to the Grants Officer. Form SF-3881 enrollment must be completed before the first award payment can be made via a Form SF-270 request.
- c. Unless otherwise provided for in the award terms, payments under this award will be made using the Department of Treasury’s Automated Standard Application for Payment (ASAP) system. Under the ASAP system, payments are made through preauthorized electronic funds transfers, in accordance with the requirements of the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996. In order to receive payments under ASAP, recipients are required to enroll with the Department of Treasury, Financial Management Service, Regional Financial Centers, which allows them to use the on-line and Voice Response System (VRS) method of withdrawing funds from their ASAP established accounts. The following information will be required to make withdrawals under ASAP: (1) ASAP account number – the award number found on the cover sheet of the award; (2) Agency Location Code (ALC); and Region Code. Recipients enrolled in the ASAP system do not need to submit a “Request for Advance or Reimbursement” (Form SF-270), for payments relating to their award. Awards paid under the ASAP system will contain a special award condition, clause, or provision describing enrollment requirements and any controls or withdrawal limits set in the ASAP system.
- d. Advances shall be limited to the minimum amounts necessary to meet immediate disbursement needs, but in no case should advances exceed the amount of cash required for a 30-day period. Advanced funds not disbursed in a timely manner and any applicable interest must be promptly returned to DOC. If a recipient demonstrates an unwillingness or inability to establish procedures that will minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement or if the recipient otherwise fails to continue to qualify for the advance method of payment, the Grants Officer may change the method of payment to reimbursement only.

### **.03 Federal and Non-Federal Sharing**

- a. Awards that include Federal and non-Federal sharing incorporate a budget consisting of shared allowable costs. If actual allowable costs are less than the total approved budget, the Federal and non-Federal cost shares shall be calculated by applying the approved Federal and non-Federal cost share ratios to actual allowable costs. If actual allowable costs are greater than the total approved budget, the Federal share shall not exceed the total Federal dollar amount authorized by the award.
- b. The non-Federal share, whether in cash or in-kind, is to be paid out at the same general rate as the Federal share. Exceptions to this requirement may be granted by the Grants Officer based on sufficient documentation demonstrating previously determined plans for, or later commitment of, cash or in-kind contributions. In any case, the recipient must meet its cost share commitment over the life of the award. The recipient must create and maintain

sufficient records justifying all non-federal sharing requirements to facilitate questions and audits, see Section D, “Audits,” for audit requirements.

#### **.04 Budget Changes and Transfer of Funds among Categories**

- a. Requests for budget changes to the approved estimated budget in accordance with the provision noted below must be submitted to the Grants Officer who shall make the final determination on such requests and notify the recipient in writing.
- b. Transfers of funds by the recipient among direct cost categories are permitted for awards in which the Federal share of the project is \$100,000 or less. For awards in which the Federal share of the project exceeds \$100,000, transfers of funds among direct cost categories must be approved in writing by the Grants Officer when the cumulative amount of such direct costs transfers exceed 10 percent of the total Federal and non-Federal funds authorized by the Grants Officer. The 10 percent threshold applies to the total Federal and non-Federal funds authorized by the Grants Officer at the time of the transfer request. This is the accumulated amount of Federal funding obligated to date by the Grants Officer along with any non-Federal share. The same requirements apply to the cumulative amount of transfer of funds among programs, functions, and activities. Transfers will not be permitted if such transfers would cause any Federal appropriation, or part thereof, to be used for purposes other than those intended. This transfer authority does not authorize the recipient to create new budget categories within an approved budget unless the Grants Officer has provided prior approval. In addition, this does not prohibit the recipient from requesting Grants Officer approval for revisions to the budget. *See* 15 C.F.R. § 14.25 and 15 C.F.R. § 24.30 (as applicable) for specific requirements concerning budget revisions and transfer of funds between budget categories.
- c. The recipient is not authorized at any time to transfer amounts budgeted for direct costs to the indirect costs line item or vice versa, without written prior approval of the Grants Officer.

#### **.05 Indirect Costs and Facilities and Administrative Costs**

- a. Indirect costs, or facilities and administrative (F&A) costs for educational institutions, will not be allowable charges against an award unless permitted under the award and specifically included as a line item in the award’s approved budget.
- b. Excess indirect costs may not be used to offset unallowable direct costs.
- c. OMB established the cognizant agency concept, under which a single agency represents all others in dealing with grantees in common areas. The cognizant agency reviews and approves grantees’ indirect cost rates. Approved rates must be accepted by other agencies, unless specific program regulations restrict the recovery of indirect costs. If indirect costs are permitted and the recipient would like to include indirect costs in its budget, but the recipient has not previously established an indirect cost rate with a Federal agency, the

negotiation and approval of a rate is subject to the procedures in the applicable cost principles and the following subparagraphs:

1. (a) State, local, and Indian Tribal Governments; Educational Institutions; Hospitals and Non-Profit Organizations (Non-Commercial Organizations)
  - i. State and Local Governments: Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) serves as the cognizant agency for all States and most cities. For certain State agencies, cities and counties, OMB published a list of cognizant Federal agency assignments on January 6, 1986 (51 FR 552). The cognizant agency for governmental units or agencies not specifically identified by OMB will be determined based on the Federal agency providing the largest amount of Federal funds. *See* Subsection D.1.b. of Appendix E to 2 C.F.R. Part 225 (OMB Circular A-87);
  - ii. Indian Tribes: Department of the Interior serves as the cognizant agency for all Indian tribal governments. *See* Subsection D.1.c. of Appendix E to 2 C.F.R. Part 225 (OMB Circular A-87);
  - iii. Educational Institutions: Department of Health and Human Services or the Department of Defense's Office of Naval Research serves as the cognizant agency for educational institutions as determined in accordance with Subsection G.11. of Appendix A to 2 C.F.R. Part 220 (OMB Circular A-21);
  - iv. Non-Profit Organizations: Cognizant agency is determined by calculating which Federal agency provides the largest dollar amount of awards to the non-profit organization in accordance with Subsection E.2. of Appendix A to 2 C.F.R. Part 230 (OMB Circular A-122); and
  - v. Hospitals: Department of Health and Human Services serves as the main cognizant agency for hospitals. *See* Appendix E to 45 C.F.R. Part 74.

For those organizations for which DOC is cognizant or has oversight, DOC or its designee will either negotiate a fixed rate with carry-forward provisions for the recipient or, in some instances, will limit its review to evaluating the procedures described in the recipient's cost allocation plan. Indirect cost rates and cost allocation methodology reviews are subject to future audits to determine actual indirect costs.

(b) Commercial Organizations

For commercial organizations, the term "cognizant Federal agency" generally is defined as the agency that provides the largest dollar amount of negotiated contracts, including options. *See* 48 C.F.R. Part 42. If the only Federal funds received by a commercial organization are DOC award funds, then DOC becomes the cognizant Federal agency for the purpose of indirect cost negotiations. For those organizations for which DOC is cognizant, DOC or its designee will negotiate a fixed rate with carry-forward provisions for the recipient. Fixed rate means an indirect cost rate that has the same characteristics as a pre-determined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the

actual costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of the subsequent period.

DOC or its designee will negotiate indirect cost rates using the cost principles found in 48 C.F.R. Part 31, "Contract Cost Principles and Procedures." For guidance on how to put an indirect cost plan together go to:

<http://www.dol.gov/oasam/programs/boc/costdeterminationguide/main.htm>

2. Within 90 days of the award start date the recipient shall submit to the address listed below documentation (indirect cost proposal, cost allocation plan, etc.) necessary to perform the review. The recipient shall provide the Grants Officer with a copy of the transmittal letter.

Office of Acquisition Management  
U.S. Department of Commerce  
14<sup>th</sup> Street and Constitution Avenue, N.W., Room 6412  
Washington, DC 20230

3. The recipient can use the fixed rate proposed in the indirect cost plan until such time as the DOC provides a response to the submitted plan. Actual indirect costs must be calculated annually and adjustments made through the carry-forward provision used in calculating next year's rate. This calculation of actual indirect costs and the carry-forward provision is subject to audit. Indirect cost rate proposals must be submitted annually. Organizations that have previously established indirect cost rates must submit a new indirect cost proposal to the cognizant agency within six months after the close of each of the recipients' fiscal years.
- d. When DOC is not the oversight or cognizant Federal agency, the recipient shall provide the Grants Officer with a copy of a negotiated rate agreement or a copy of the transmittal letter submitted to the cognizant or oversight Federal agency requesting a negotiated rate agreement.
- e. If the recipient fails to submit the required documentation to DOC within 90 days of the award start date, the Grants Officer may amend the award to preclude the recovery of any indirect costs under the award. If the DOC, oversight, or cognizant Federal agency determines there is a finding of good and sufficient cause to excuse the recipient's delay in submitting the documentation, an extension of the 90-day due date may be approved by the Grants Officer.
- f. The maximum dollar amount of allocable indirect costs for which DOC will reimburse the recipient shall be the lesser of:

1. The line item amount for the Federal share of indirect costs contained in the approved award budget, including all budget revisions approved in writing by the Grants Officer; or
2. The Federal share of the total indirect costs allocable to the award based on the indirect cost rate approved by a cognizant or oversight Federal Agency and applicable to the period in which the cost was occurred, provided that the rate is approved on or before the award end date.

#### **.06 Incurring Costs or Obligating Federal Funds beyond the Expiration Date**

- a. The recipient shall not incur costs or obligate funds for any purpose pertaining to the operation of the project, program, or activities beyond the project period, which is the period established in the award document during which Federal sponsorship begins and ends. *See, e.g., 15 C.F.R. § 14.2(cc).* The only costs which are authorized for a period of up to 90 days following the end of the project period are those strictly associated with close-out activities. Close-out activities are normally limited to the preparation of final progress, financial, and required project audit reports unless otherwise approved in writing by the Grants Officer. The Grants Officer may approve extensions of the 90-day closeout period upon a request by the recipient as provided in 15 C.F.R. §§ 14.71 and 24.50.
- b. Unless otherwise authorized in 15 C.F.R. § 14.25(e)(2) or a special award condition, any extension of the project period can only be authorized by the Grants Officer in writing. Verbal or written assurances of funding from anyone other than the Grants Officer shall not constitute authority to obligate funds for programmatic activities beyond the end of the project period.
- c. The DOC has no obligation to provide any additional prospective funding. Any amendment of the award to increase funding and to extend the project period is at the sole discretion of DOC.

#### **.07 Tax Refunds**

Refunds of Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA) or Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA) taxes received by the recipient during or after the project period must be refunded or credited to DOC where the benefits were financed with Federal funds under the award. The recipient agrees to contact the Grants Officer immediately upon receipt of these refunds. The recipient further agrees to refund portions of FICA/FUTA taxes determined to belong to the Federal Government, including refunds received after the project period ends.

### **B. PROGRAMMATIC REQUIREMENTS**

#### **.01 Performance (Technical) Reports**

- a. The recipient shall submit performance (technical) reports electronically or in hard copy (no more than an original and two copies), in accordance with the award conditions, to the Federal Program Officer. Performance Reports should be submitted in the same frequency as the Federal Financial Report (Form SF-425), unless otherwise authorized by the Grants Officer.
- b. Performance (technical) reports shall contain brief information as prescribed in the applicable uniform administrative requirements incorporated into the award, unless otherwise specified in the award provisions.

### **.02 Unsatisfactory Performance**

Failure to perform the work in accordance with the terms of the award and maintain at least a satisfactory performance rating or equivalent evaluation may result in designation of the recipient as high risk and assignment of special award conditions or other further action as specified in the standard term and condition entitled “Non-Compliance with Award Provisions.”

### **.03 Programmatic Changes**

The recipient shall report programmatic changes to the Program Officer who forwards the request to the Grants Officer, and shall request prior approvals in accordance with 15 C.F.R. § 14.25 or 15 C.F.R. § 24.30, as applicable.

### **.04 Other Federal Awards with Similar Programmatic Activities**

The recipient shall immediately provide written notification to the Federal Program Officer and the Grants Officer in the event that, subsequent to receipt of the DOC award, other financial assistance is received to support or fund any portion of the scope of work incorporated into the DOC award. DOC will not pay for costs that are funded by other sources.

### **.05 Non-Compliance with Award Provisions**

Failure to comply with any or all of the provisions of the award may have a negative impact on future funding by DOC and may be considered grounds for any or all of the following actions: establishment of an account receivable, withholding payments under any DOC awards to the recipient, changing the method of payment from advance to reimbursement only, or the imposition of other special award conditions, suspension of any active DOC awards, and termination of any active DOC awards.

### **.06 Prohibition against Assignment by the Recipient**

The recipient shall not transfer, pledge, mortgage, or otherwise assign the award, or any interest therein, or any claim arising thereunder, to any party or parties, banks, trust companies, or other financing or financial institutions without the express written approval of the Grants Officer.

## **.07 Disclaimer Provisions**

- a. The United States expressly disclaims any and all responsibility or liability to the recipient or third persons for the actions of the recipient or third persons resulting in death, bodily injury, property damages, or any other losses resulting in any way from the performance of this award or any subaward or subcontract under this award.
- b. The acceptance of this award by the recipient does not in any way constitute an agency relationship between the United States and the recipient.

## **C. NON-DISCRIMINATION REQUIREMENTS**

No person in the United States shall, on the ground of race, color, national origin, handicap, age, religion, or sex, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subject to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance. The recipient agrees to comply with the non-discrimination requirements below:

### **.01 Statutory Provisions**

- a. Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. §§ 2000d *et seq.*) and DOC implementing regulations published at 15 C.F.R. Part 8 prohibiting discrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin under programs or activities receiving Federal financial assistance;
- b. Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. §§ 1681 *et seq.*) prohibiting discrimination on the basis of sex under Federally assisted education programs or activities;
- c. The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. §§ 12101 *et seq.*) prohibiting discrimination on the basis of disability under programs, activities, and services provided or made available by state and local governments or instrumentalities or agencies thereto, as well as public or private entities that provide public transportation;
- d. Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. § 794), and DOC implementing regulations published at 15 C.F.R. Part 8b prohibiting discrimination on the basis of handicap under any program or activity receiving or benefiting from Federal assistance:

Revised ADA Standards for Accessible Design for Construction Awards: The U.S. Department of Justice has issued revised regulations implementing Title II of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) (28 C.F.R. part 35; 75 FR 56164, as amended by 76 FR 13285) and Title III of the ADA (28 C.F.R. part 36; 75 FR 56164, as amended by 76 FR 13286). The revised regulations adopted new enforceable accessibility standards called the “2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design” (2010 Standards). The 2010 Standards are an acceptable alternative to the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS). DOC deems compliance with the 2010 Standards to be an acceptable means of complying with the

Section 504 accessibility requirements for new construction and alteration projects under 15 C.F.R. § 8b.18(c), as follows:

1. Public Recipients subject to Title II of the ADA may use either the 2010 Standards or UFAS where the physical construction or alternations commence on or after September 15, 2010 and before March 15, 2012 (see 28 C.F.R. § 35.151(c)(2)); and
2. Private Recipients subject to Title III of the ADA may use either the 2010 Standards or UFAS if the date when the last application for a building permit or permit extension is certified to be complete by a State, county, or local government (or, in those jurisdictions where the government does not certify completion of applications, if the date when the last application for a building permit or permit extension is received by the State, county, or local government) is on or after September 15, 2010 and before March 15, 2012, or if no permit is required, if the start of physical construction or alterations occurs on or after September 15, 2010 and before March 15, 2012 (see 28 C.F.R. § 36.406(a)(2)).

In all cases, once a recipient selects an applicable ADA accessibility standard (i.e., the 2010 Standards or UFAS), that standard must be applied to the entire facility.

As of March 15, 2012, all new construction and alteration projects must comply with the 2010 Standards.

- e. The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended (42 U.S.C. §§ 6101 *et seq.*), and DOC implementing regulations published at 15 C.F.R. Part 20 prohibiting discrimination on the basis of age in programs or activities receiving Federal financial assistance;
- f. Any other applicable non-discrimination law(s).

## **.02 Other Provisions**

- a. Parts II and III of Executive Order (E.O.) 11246, “Equal Employment Opportunity,” (30 FR 12319, 1965), as amended by E.O. 11375 (32 FR 14303, 1967) and E.O. 12086 (43 FR 46501, 1978), requiring Federally assisted construction contracts to include the nondiscrimination provisions of §§ 202 and 203 of that E.O. and Department of Labor regulations implementing E.O. 11246 (41 C.F.R. § 60-1.4(b), 1991).
- b. Executive Order 13166 (August 11, 2000), “Improving Access to Services for Persons With Limited English Proficiency,” requiring Federal agencies to examine the services provided, identify any need for services to those with limited English proficiency (LEP), and develop and implement a system to provide those services so LEP persons can have meaningful access to them, and DOC policy guidance issued on March 24, 2003 (68 FR 14180) to Federal financial assistance recipients on the Title VI prohibition against national origin discrimination affecting LEP persons.

### **.03 Title VII Exemption for Religious Organizations**

Generally, Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e *et seq.*, provides that it shall be an unlawful employment practice for an employer to discharge any individual or otherwise to discriminate against an individual with respect to compensation, terms, conditions, or privileges of employment because of such individual's race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. However, Title VII, 42 U.S.C. § 2000e-1(a), expressly exempts from the prohibition against discrimination on the basis of religion, a religious corporation, association, educational institution, or society with respect to the employment of individuals of a particular religion to perform work connected with the carrying on by such corporation, association, educational institution, or society of its activities.

## **D. AUDITS**

Under the Inspector General Act of 1978, as amended, 5 U.S.C. App. 3, § 1 *et seq.*, an audit of the award may be conducted at any time. The Inspector General of the DOC, or any of his or her duly authorized representatives, shall have access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient, whether written, printed, recorded, produced, or reproduced by any electronic, mechanical, magnetic, or other process or medium, in order to make audits, inspections, excerpts, transcripts, or other examinations as authorized by law. When the DOC Office of Inspector General (OIG) requires a program audit on a DOC award, the OIG will usually make the arrangements to audit the award, whether the audit is performed by OIG personnel, an independent accountant under contract with DOC, or any other Federal, State, or local audit entity.

### **.01 Organization-Wide, Program-Specific, and Project Audits**

- a. Organization-wide or program-specific audits shall be performed in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, as implemented by OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations." Recipients that are subject to the provisions of OMB Circular A-133 and that expend \$500,000 or more in a year in Federal awards shall have an audit conducted for that year in accordance with the requirements contained in OMB Circular A-133. A copy of the audit shall be submitted to the Bureau of the Census, which has been designated by OMB as a central clearinghouse, by electronic submission to the Federal Audit Clearinghouse website <http://harvester.census.gov/sac/>. If it is necessary to submit by paper, the address for submission is:

Federal Audit Clearinghouse  
Bureau of the Census  
1201 E. 10th Street  
Jeffersonville, IN 47132

- b. Unless otherwise specified in the terms and conditions of the award, in accordance with 15 C.F.R. § 14.26(c) and (d), for-profit hospitals, commercial entities, and other

organizations not required to follow the audit provisions of OMB Circular A-133 shall have a program specific audit performed by an independent auditor when the Federal share amount awarded is \$500,000 or more over the duration of the project period. An audit is required at least once every two years using the following schedule for audit report submission:

1. For awards where the project period is less than two years, an audit is required within 90 days of the end of the project period to cover the entire project (the award close-out period is included in the 90 days);
2. For awards with a two- or three-year project period, an audit is required within 90 days after the end of the first year to cover Year 1, which is the period of time when Federal funding is available for obligation by the recipient, and within 90 days of the end of the project period to cover Year 2 and Year 3 (if applicable) (the award close-out period is included in the 90 days); or
3. For awards with a four- to five-year project period, an audit is required within 90 days after the end of the first year to cover Year 1, within 90 days after the end of the third year to cover Year 2 and Year 3, and within 90 days of the end of the project period to cover Year 4 and Year 5 (if applicable) (the award close-out period is included in the 90 days).

Some DOC programs have specific audit guidelines that will be incorporated into the award. When DOC does not have a program-specific audit guide available for the program, the auditor will follow the requirements for a program-specific audit as described in OMB Circular A-133, § .235. The recipient may include a line item in the budget for the cost of the audit for approval. A copy of the program-specific audit shall be submitted to the Grants Officer and to the OIG at [NonFederalAudits@OIG.DOC.GOV](mailto:NonFederalAudits@OIG.DOC.GOV) or if e-mail is unavailable, submission to the OIG can be made at the following address:

Office of Inspector General  
U.S. Department of Commerce  
Atlanta Regional Office of Audits  
401 West Peachtree Street, N.W., Suite 2742  
Atlanta, GA 30308

## **.02 Audit Resolution Process**

- a. An audit of the award may result in the disallowance of costs incurred by the recipient and the establishment of a debt (account receivable) due DOC. For this reason, the recipient should take seriously its responsibility to respond to all audit findings and recommendations with adequate explanations and supporting evidence whenever audit results are disputed.
- b. In accordance with the *Federal Register* notice dated January 27, 1989 (54 FR 4053), a recipient whose award is audited has the following opportunities to dispute the proposed disallowance of costs and the establishment of a debt:

1. Unless the Inspector General determines otherwise, the recipient has 30 days from the date of the transmittal of the draft audit report to submit written comments and documentary evidence.
2. The recipient has 30 days from the date of the transmittal of the final audit report to submit written comments and documentary evidence. There will be no extension of this deadline.
3. The DOC shall review the documentary evidence submitted by the recipient and shall notify the recipient of the results in an *Audit Resolution Determination Letter*. The recipient has 30 days from the date of receipt of the *Audit Resolution Determination Letter* to submit a written appeal. There will be no extension of this deadline. The appeal is the last opportunity for the recipient to submit written comments and documentary evidence that dispute the validity of the audit resolution determination.
4. An appeal of the Audit Resolution Determination does not prevent the establishment of the audit-related debt nor does it prevent the accrual of interest on the debt. If the Audit Resolution Determination is overruled or modified on appeal, appropriate corrective action will be taken retroactively. An appeal will stay the offset of funds owed by the auditee against funds due to the auditee.
5. The DOC shall review the recipient's appeal and notify the recipient of the results in an *Appeal Determination Letter*. After the opportunity to appeal has expired or after the appeal determination has been rendered, DOC will not accept any further documentary evidence from the recipient. No other administrative appeals are available in DOC.

## **E. DEBTS**

### **.01 Payment of Debts Owed the Federal Government**

Any debts determined to be owed the Federal Government shall be paid promptly by the recipient. DOC debt collection procedures are set out in 15 C.F.R. Part 19. In accordance with 15 C.F.R. § 19.1, delinquent debt is a debt that has not been paid by the date specified in the agency's initial written demand for payment or applicable agreement or instrument (including a post-delinquency payment agreement) unless other satisfactory payment arrangements have been made. In accordance with 15 C.F.R. § 19.5 and 31 U.S.C. § 3717, failure to pay a debt by the due date, or if there is no due date, within 30 days of the billing date, shall result in the assessment of interest, penalties and administrative costs in accordance with the provisions of 31 U.S.C. § 3717 and 31 C.F.R. § 901.9. Commerce entities will transfer any Commerce debt that is more than 180 days delinquent to the Financial Management Service for debt collection services, a process known as "cross-servicing," pursuant 31 U.S.C. § 3711(g), 31 C.F.R. § 285.12 and 15 C.F.R. § 19.9, and may result in DOC taking further action as specified in the standard term and condition entitled "Non-Compliance With Award Provisions." Funds for

payment of a debt must not come from other Federally-sponsored programs. Verification that other Federal funds have not been used will be made, e.g., during on-site visits and audits.

## **.02 Late Payment Charges**

- a. Interest shall be assessed on the delinquent debt in accordance with section 3717(a) of the Debt Collection Act (see 31 U.S.C. § 3701 *et seq.* for the entire Debt Collection Act), as amended. The minimum annual interest rate to be assessed is the Department of the Treasury's Current Value of Funds Rate (CVFR). The CVFR is available online at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/cvfr/index.html>. The CVFR is published by the Department of the Treasury in the *Federal Register* (<http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/browse/collection.action?collectionCode=FR>) and in the *Treasury Financial Manual Bulletin*. The assessed rate shall remain fixed for the duration of the indebtedness.
- b. Penalties shall accrue at a rate of not more than 6 percent per year or such other higher rate as authorized by law.
- c. Administrative charges, that is, the costs of processing and handling a delinquent debt, shall be determined by the Commerce entity collecting the debt, as directed by the Office of the Commerce Deputy Chief Financial Officer.

## **.03 Barring Delinquent Federal Debtors from Obtaining Federal Loans or Loan Insurance Guarantees**

Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. § 3720B and 31 C.F.R. § 901.6, unless waived, the DOC is not permitted to extend financial assistance in the form of a loan, loan guarantee, or loan insurance to any person delinquent on a nontax debt owed to a Federal agency. This prohibition does not apply to disaster loans.

## **.04 Effect of Judgment Lien on Eligibility for Federal Grants, Loans, or Programs**

Pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 3201(e), unless waived by the DOC, a debtor who has a judgment lien against the debtor's property for a debt to the United States shall not be eligible to receive any grant or loan that is made, insured, guaranteed, or financed directly or indirectly by the United States or to receive funds directly from the Federal Government in any program, except funds to which the debtor is entitled as beneficiary, until the judgment is paid in full or otherwise satisfied.

## **F. GOVERNMENTWIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION**

The recipient shall comply with the provisions of Subpart C of 2 C.F.R. Part 1326, "Nonprocurement Debarment and Suspension" (published in the *Federal Register* on December

21, 2006, 71 FR 76573), which generally prohibit entities that have been debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded from participating in Federal nonprocurement transactions either through primary or lower tier covered transactions, and which sets forth the responsibilities of recipients of Federal financial assistance regarding transactions with other persons, including subrecipients and contractors.

## **G. DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE**

The recipient shall comply with the provisions of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 (Pub. L. No. 100-690, Title V, Sec. 5153, as amended by Pub. L. No. 105-85, Div. A, Title VIII, Sec. 809, as codified at 41 U.S.C. § 8102) and DOC implementing regulations published at 15 C.F.R. Part 29 “Governmentwide Requirements for Drug-Free Workplace (Financial Assistance),” which require that the recipient take steps to provide a drug-free workplace.

## **H. LOBBYING RESTRICTIONS**

### **.01 Statutory Provisions**

The recipient shall comply with the provisions of 31 U.S.C. § 1352 and DOC implementing regulations published at 15 C.F.R. Part 28, “New Restrictions on Lobbying.” These provisions prohibit the use of Federal funds for lobbying the Executive or Legislative Branches of the Federal Government in connection with the award, and require the disclosure of the use of non-Federal funds for lobbying.

### **.02 Disclosure of Lobbying Activities**

The recipient receiving in excess of \$100,000 in Federal funding shall submit a completed Form SF-LLL, “Disclosure of Lobbying Activities,” regarding the use of non-Federal funds for lobbying. The Form SF-LLL shall be submitted within 30 days following the end of the calendar quarter in which there occurs any event that requires disclosure or that materially affects the accuracy of the information contained in any disclosure form previously filed. The recipient must submit any required Forms SF-LLL, including those received from subrecipients, contractors, and subcontractors, to the Grants Officer.

## **I. CODES OF CONDUCT AND SUBAWARD, CONTRACT, AND SUBCONTRACT PROVISIONS**

### **.01 Code of Conduct for Recipients**

Pursuant to the certification in Form SF-424B, paragraph 3, the recipient must maintain written standards of conduct to establish safeguards to prohibit employees from using their positions for

a purpose that constitutes or presents the appearance of personal or organizational conflict of interest, or personal gain in the administration of this award.

## **.02 Applicability of Award Provisions to Subrecipients**

- a. The recipient shall require all subrecipients, including lower tier subrecipients, under the award to comply with the provisions of the award, including applicable cost principles, administrative, audit requirements, and all associated terms and conditions.
- b. A recipient is responsible for subrecipient monitoring, including the following:
  1. **Award Identification.** At the time of the award, identifying to the subrecipient the Federal award information (e.g., CFDA title and number, award name, name of Federal agency) and applicable compliance requirements.
  2. **During-the-Award Monitoring.** Monitoring the subrecipient's use of Federal awards through reporting, site visits, regular contact, or other means to provide reasonable assurance that the subrecipient administers Federal awards in compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements and that performance goals are achieved.
  3. **Subrecipient Audits.** Ensuring that subrecipients expending \$500,000 or more in Federal awards during the subrecipient's fiscal year have met the audit requirements of OMB Circular A-133, and that the required audits are completed within 9 months of the end of the subrecipient's audit period. In addition, the recipient is required to issue a management decision on audit findings within 6 months after receipt of the subrecipient's audit report, and ensuring that the subrecipient takes timely and appropriate corrective action on all audit findings. In cases of continued inability or unwillingness of a subrecipient to have the required audits, the pass-through entity shall take appropriate action using sanctions.

## **.03 Competition and Codes of Conduct for Subawards**

- a. All subawards will be made in a manner to provide, to the maximum extent practicable, open and free competition. The recipient must be alert to organizational conflicts of interest as well as other practices among subrecipients that may restrict or eliminate competition. In order to ensure objective subrecipient performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, subrecipients that develop or draft work requirements, statements of work, or requests for proposals shall be excluded from competing for such subawards.
- b. The recipient shall maintain written standards of conduct governing the performance of its employees engaged in the award and administration of subawards. No employee, officer, or agent shall participate in the selection, award, or administration of a subaward supported by Federal funds if a real or apparent conflict of interest would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate

family, his or her partner, or an organization in which he/she serves as an officer or which employs or is about to employ any of the parties mentioned in this section, has a financial interest or other interest in the organization selected or to be selected for a subaward. The officers, employees, and agents of the recipient shall neither solicit nor accept anything of monetary value from subrecipients. However, the recipient may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct shall provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the recipient.

- c. A financial interest may include employment, stock ownership, a creditor or debtor relationship, or prospective employment with the organization selected or to be selected for a subaward. An appearance of impairment of objectivity could result from an organizational conflict where, because of other activities or relationships with other persons or entities, a person is unable or potentially unable to render impartial assistance or advice. It could also result from non-financial gain to the individual, such as benefit to reputation or prestige in a professional field.

#### **.04 Applicability of Provisions to Subawards, Contracts, and Subcontracts**

- a. The recipient shall include the following notice in each request for applications or bids for a subaward, contract, or subcontract, as applicable:

*Applicants/bidders for a lower tier covered transaction (except procurement contracts for goods and services under \$25,000 not requiring the consent of a DOC official) are subject to 2 C.F.R. Part 1326, Subpart C “Governmentwide Debarment and Suspension (Nonprocurement).” In addition, applicants/bidders for a lower tier covered transaction for a subaward, contract, or subcontract greater than \$100,000 of Federal funds at any tier are subject to 15 C.F.R. Part 28, “New Restrictions on Lobbying.” Applicants/bidders should familiarize themselves with these provisions, including the certification requirement. Therefore, applications for a lower tier covered transaction must include a Form CD-512, “Certification Regarding Lobbying--Lower Tier Covered Transactions,” completed without modification.*

- b. The recipient shall include a term or condition in all lower tier covered transactions (subawards, contracts, and subcontracts), that the award is subject to Subpart C of 2 C.F.R. Part 1326, “Nonprocurement Debarment and Suspension.”
- c. The recipient shall include a statement in all lower tier covered transactions (subawards, contracts, and subcontracts) exceeding \$100,000 in Federal funds, that the subaward, contract, or subcontract is subject to 31 U.S.C § 1352, as implemented at 15 C.F.R. Part 28, “New Restrictions on Lobbying.” The recipient shall further require the subrecipient, contractor, or subcontractor to submit a completed “Disclosure of Lobbying Activities” (Form SF-LLL) regarding the use of non-Federal funds for lobbying. The Form SF-LLL shall be submitted within 15 days following the end of the calendar quarter in which there

occurs any event that requires disclosure or that materially affects the accuracy of the information contained in any disclosure form previously filed. The Form SF-LLL shall be submitted from tier to tier until received by the recipient. The recipient must submit all disclosure forms received, including those that report lobbying activity on its own behalf, to the Grants Officer within 30 days following the end of the calendar quarter.

#### **.05 Small Businesses, Minority Business Enterprises and Women's Business Enterprises**

DOC encourages recipients to utilize small businesses, minority business enterprises and women's business enterprises in contracts under financial assistance awards. The Minority Business Development Agency will assist recipients in matching qualified minority business enterprises with contract opportunities. For further information visit MBDA's website at <http://www.mbda.gov>. If you do not have access to the Internet, you may contact MBDA via telephone or mail:

U.S. Department of Commerce  
Minority Business Development Agency  
Herbert C. Hoover Building  
14th Street and Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20230  
(202) 482-0101

#### **.06 Subaward and/or Contract to a Federal Agency**

- a. The recipient, subrecipient, contractor, and/or subcontractor shall not sub-grant or sub-contract any part of the approved project to any agency or employee of DOC and/or other Federal department, agency, or instrumentality without the prior written approval of the Grants Officer.
- b. Requests for approval of such action must be submitted to the Federal Program Officer who shall review and make a recommendation to the Grants Officer. The Grants Officer must forward all requests to the Federal Assistance Law Division in the Office of the Department of Commerce Assistant General Counsel for Finance and Litigation for review prior to making the final determination. The Grants Officer will notify the recipient in writing of the final determination.

### **J. PROPERTY**

#### **.01 Standards**

The recipient shall comply with the property management standards as stipulated in the uniform administrative requirements set forth in 15 C.F.R. §§ 14.30 - 14.37 and 15 C.F.R. §§ 24.31 - 24.34.

## **.02 Real and Personal Property**

A recipient holds all real property and tangible and intangible personal property that it acquires or improves, in whole or in part, with funds made available under a DOC financial assistance award in trust for the public purposes for which the award was made. This trust relationship exists throughout the duration of the property's estimated useful life, as determined by the Grants Officer in consultation with the Program Office, during which time the Federal Government retains an undivided, equitable reversionary interest in the property (Federal Interest). During the duration of the Federal Interest, the recipient shall comply with all use and disposition requirements and restrictions as set forth in 15 C.F.R. §§ 14.30 – 14.37 and 15 C.F.R. §§ 24.31 – 24.34, as applicable, and in the terms and conditions of the financial assistance award. The Grants Officer may require a recipient to execute a security interest or other public notice of record to indicate that real or personal property acquired or improved in whole or in part with Federal funds is subject to the Federal Interest, and that certain use and disposition requirements apply to the property. The security interest or other public notice must be acceptable in form and substance to the DOC and must be perfected and placed of record in accordance with applicable State and local law, with continuances re-filed as appropriate. In such cases, the Grants Officer may further require the recipient to provide the DOC with a written statement from a licensed attorney in the jurisdiction where the property is located certifying that the Federal Interest has been protected, as required under the award and in accordance with applicable State and local law. The attorney's statement, along with a copy of the instrument reflecting the recordation of the Federal Interest, shall be returned to the Grants Officer. The Grants Officer may elect not to release any or a portion of the Federal award funds until the recipient has complied with this provision any other applicable award terms or conditions, unless other arrangements satisfactory to the Grants Officer are made.

The Grants Officer may require the recipient to submit Form SF-428, Tangible Personal Property Report, and/or Form SF-429, Real Property Status Report, including applicable attachments to each form, in connection with the reporting of tangible personal property or of real property acquired or improved, in whole or in part, under a DOC financial assistance award, or of Federally-owned property that is in the recipient's custody pursuant to a DOC financial assistance award. The Grants Officer may also require the recipient to submit Form SF-428 and/or Form SF-429 in connection with a recipient's request to acquire, encumber, dispose of, or any other action or activity pertaining to tangible personal property or to real property acquired or improved, in whole or in part, under a DOC financial assistance award or to Federally-owned property.

## **K. ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

Environmental impacts must be considered by Federal decision makers in their decisions whether or not to: (1) approve a proposal for Federal assistance; (2) approve the proposal with mitigation; or (3) approve a different proposal/grant having less adverse environmental impacts. Federal environmental laws require that the funding agency initiate an early planning process

that considers potential impacts that projects funded with Federal assistance may have on the environment. The recipient and subrecipients must comply with all environmental standards, to include those prescribed under the following statutes and E.O.s, and shall identify to the awarding agency any impact the award may have on the environment. In some cases, award funds can be withheld by the Grants Officer under a special award condition requiring the recipient to submit additional environmental compliance information sufficient to enable the DOC to make an assessment on any impacts that a project may have on the environment.

### **.01 The National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. § 4321 *et seq.*)**

The National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and the Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) implementing regulations (40 C.F.R. Parts 1500 through 1508) require that an environmental analysis be completed for all major Federal actions significantly affecting the environment. NEPA applies to the actions of Federal agencies and may include a Federal agency's decision to fund non-Federal projects under grants and cooperative agreements when the award activities remain subject to Federal authority and control. Recipients of Federal assistance are required to identify to the awarding agency any impact an award will have on the quality of the human environment, and assist the agency in complying with NEPA. Recipients may also be requested to assist DOC in drafting an environmental assessment or environmental impact statement if DOC determines such documentation is required. Until such time as the appropriate NEPA documentation is complete, funds can be withheld by the Grants Officer under a special award condition requiring the recipient to submit the appropriate NEPA documentation sufficient to enable DOC to make an assessment on any impacts that a project may have on the environment. In the event that any additional information is required during the project period in order to assess any impacts that a project may have on the environment, funds can be withheld by the Grants Officer under a special award condition requiring the recipient to submit such additional environmental compliance information sufficient to enable DOC to make the requisite assessment.

### **.02 National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. § 470 *et seq.*)**

Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) (16 U.S.C. § 470f) and the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation implementing regulations (36 C.F.R. Part 800) require that Federal agencies take into account the effects of their undertakings on historic properties. Recipients of Federal funding are required to identify to the awarding agency any effects the award may have on properties included on or eligible for inclusion on the National Register of Historic Places. Recipients may also be requested to assist DOC in consulting with State or Tribal Historic Preservation Officers or other applicable interested parties necessary to identify, assess and resolve adverse effects to historic properties. Until such time as the appropriate NHPA consultations and documentation is complete, funds can be withheld by the Grants Officer under a special award condition requiring the recipient to fully comply with the requirement of the NHPA. In the event that any additional information is required during the project period in order to assess any impacts that a project may have on historic properties, funds can be withheld by the Grants Officer under a special award condition requiring the recipient to submit such additional information sufficient to enable DOC to make the requisite assessment.

**.03 Executive Order 11988 (“Floodplain Management”) and Executive Order 11990 (“Protection of Wetlands”)**

Recipients must identify proposed actions in Federally defined floodplains and wetlands to enable DOC to make a determination whether there is an alternative to minimize any potential harm.

**.04 Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. § 7401 *et seq.*), Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. § 1251 *et seq.*) (Clean Water Act), and Executive Order 11738 (“Providing for administration of the Clean Air Act and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act with respect to Federal contracts, grants or loans”)**

Recipients must comply with the provisions of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. § 7401 *et seq.*), Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. § 1251 *et seq.*), and E.O. 11738, and shall not use a facility on the Environmental Protection Agency’s (EPA) List of Violating Facilities (this list is incorporated into the Excluded Parties List System located at <https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/>) in performing any award that is nonexempt under 2 C.F.R. § 1532, and shall notify the Program Officer in writing if it intends to use a facility that is on the EPA List of Violating Facilities or knows that the facility has been recommended to be placed on the List.

**.05 The Flood Disaster Protection Act (42 U.S.C. § 4002 *et seq.*)**

Flood insurance, when available, is required for Federally assisted construction or acquisition in flood-prone areas.

**.06 The Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. § 1531 *et seq.*)**

Recipients must identify any impact or activities that may involve a threatened or endangered species. Federal agencies have the responsibility to ensure that no adverse effects to a protected species or habitat occur from actions under Federal assistance awards and conduct the reviews required under the Endangered Species Act, as applicable.

**.07 The Coastal Zone Management Act (16 U.S.C. § 1451 *et seq.*)**

Funded projects must be consistent with a coastal State’s approved management program for the coastal zone.

**.08 The Coastal Barriers Resources Act (16 U.S.C. § 3501 *et seq.*)**

Only in certain circumstances can Federal funding be provided for actions within a Coastal Barrier System.

**.09 The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act (16 U.S.C. § 1271 *et seq.*)**

This Act applies to awards that may affect existing or proposed components of the National Wild and Scenic Rivers system.

**.10 The Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 300f *et seq.*)**

This Act precludes Federal assistance for any project that the EPA determines may contaminate a sole source aquifer so as to threaten public health.

**.11 The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (42 U.S.C. § 6901 *et seq.*)**

This Act regulates the generation, transportation, treatment, and disposal of hazardous wastes, and also provides that recipients of Federal funds give preference in their procurement programs to the purchase of recycled products pursuant to EPA guidelines.

**.12 The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (Superfund) (42 U.S.C. § 9601 *et seq.*) and the Community Environmental Response Facilitation Act (41 U.S.C. § 11001 *et seq.*)**

These requirements address responsibilities related to hazardous substance releases, threatened releases and environmental cleanup. There are also reporting and community involvement requirements designed to ensure disclosure of the release or disposal of regulated substances and cleanup of hazards to state and local emergency responders.

**.13 Executive Order 12898 (“Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low Income Populations”)**

Federal agencies are required to identify and address the disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects of Federal programs, policies, and activities on low income and minority populations.

## **L. MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS**

### **.01 Criminal and Prohibited Activities**

- a. The Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act (31 U.S.C. § 3801 *et seq.*), provides for the imposition of civil penalties against persons who make false, fictitious, or fraudulent claims to the Federal Government for money (including money representing grants, loans, or other benefits).

- b. The False Claims Amendments Act and the False Statements Act (18 U.S.C. §§ 287 and 1001, respectively), provide that whoever makes or presents any false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement, representation, or claim against the United States shall be subject to imprisonment of not more than five years and shall be subject to a fine in the amount provided by 18 U.S.C. § 287.
- c. The Civil False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. § 3729 *et seq.*), provides that suits can be brought by the government, or a person on behalf of the government, for false claims made under Federal assistance programs.
- d. The Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act (18 U.S.C. § 874), prohibits a person or organization engaged in a Federally supported project from enticing an employee working on the project from giving up a part of his compensation under an employment contract. The Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act also applies to contractors and subcontractors pursuant to 40 U.S.C. § 3145.

## **.02 Foreign Travel**

- a. The recipient shall comply with the provisions of the Fly America Act (49 U.S.C. § 40118). The implementing regulations of the Fly America Act are found at 41 C.F.R. §§ 301-10.131 through 301-10.143.
- b. The Fly America Act requires that Federal travelers and others performing U.S. Government-financed air travel must use U.S. flag air carriers, to the extent that service by such carriers is available. Foreign air carriers may be used only in specific instances, such as when a U.S. flag air carrier is unavailable, or use of U.S. flag air carrier service will not accomplish the agency’s mission.
- c. One exception to the requirement to fly U.S. flag carriers is transportation provided under a bilateral or multilateral air transport agreement, to which the United States Government and the government of a foreign country are parties, and which the Department of Transportation has determined meets the requirements of the Fly America Act pursuant to 49 U.S.C. § 40118(b). The United States Government has entered into bilateral/multilateral “Open Skies Agreements” (U.S. Government Procured Transportation) that allow federal funded transportation services for travel and cargo movements to use foreign air carriers under certain circumstances. There are multiple “Open Skies Agreements” currently in effect. For more information about the current bilateral and multilateral agreements, visit the GSA website <http://www.gsa.gov/portal/content/103191>. Information on the Open Skies agreements (U.S. Government Procured Transportation) and other specific country agreements may be accessed via the Department of State’s website <http://www.state.gov/e/eeb/tra/>.
- d. If a foreign air carrier is anticipated to be used for any portion of travel under a DOC financial assistance award the recipient must receive prior approval from the Grants Officer. When requesting such approval, the recipient must provide a justification in accordance with

guidance provided by 41 C.F.R. § 301-10.142, which requires the recipient to provide the Grants Officer with the following: name; dates of travel; origin and destination of travel; detailed itinerary of travel; name of the air carrier and flight number for each leg of the trip; and a statement explaining why the recipient meets one of the exceptions to the regulations. If the use of a foreign air carrier is pursuant to a bilateral agreement, the recipient must provide the Grants Officer with a copy of the agreement or a citation to the official agreement available on the GSA website. The Grants Officer shall make the final determination and notify the recipient in writing. Failure to adhere to the provisions of the Fly America Act will result in the recipient not being reimbursed for any transportation costs for which the recipient improperly used a foreign air carrier.

### **.03 American-Made Equipment and Products**

Recipients are hereby notified that they are encouraged, to the greatest extent practicable, to purchase American-made equipment and products with funding provided under this award.

### **.04 Intellectual Property Rights**

- a. Inventions. Unless otherwise provided by law, the rights to any invention made by a recipient under a DOC financial assistance award are determined by the Bayh-Dole Act, Pub. L. No. 96-517, as amended, and as codified in 35 U.S.C. § 200 *et seq.*, except as otherwise required by law. The specific requirements governing the development, reporting, and disposition of rights to inventions and patents resulting from financial assistance awards are described in more detail in 37 C.F.R. Part 401 and in particular, in the standard patent rights clause in 37 C.F.R. § 401.14, which is hereby incorporated by reference into this award.

1. Ownership.

- (a) Recipient. The recipient has the right to elect to retain title to any invention it makes (conceived or first actually reduced to practice) or is made by its employees. A recipient that is a non-profit organization, which includes a university or other institution of higher learning, may not assign to a third party its rights to such an invention without the permission of DOC unless that assignment is to a patent management organization (i.e., a university's Research Foundation.) The recipient's ownership rights are subject to the Government's nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license and other rights.
- (b) Department. If the recipient elects not to retain title, fails to disclose the invention to the agency within the required time limits, or does not file a patent application within the time limits set forth in the standard patent rights clause, DOC may request an assignment of all rights, which is normally subject to a limited royalty free nonexclusive revocable license for the recipient. DOC owns any invention made solely by its employees, but

may license the recipient in accordance with the procedures in 37 C.F.R. Part 404.

- (c) Inventor/Employer. If neither the recipient nor DOC is interested in owning an invention by a recipient employee, the recipient, with the written concurrence of DOC, may allow the inventor/employee to retain ownership of the invention subject to certain restrictions as described in 37 C.F.R. § 401.9.
- (d) Joint inventions. Inventions made jointly by a recipient and a DOC employee will be owned jointly by the recipient and DOC. However, DOC may transfer or license its rights to the recipient as authorized by 35 U.S.C. § 202(e) and 37 C.F.R. § 401.10 if the recipient is willing to patent and license the invention usually in exchange for a share of “net” royalties based on the number of inventors (e.g., 50-50 if there is one recipient inventor and one DOC employee inventor). The agreement will be prepared by DOC and may include other provisions, such as a royalty free license to the Government and certain other entities. The provision at 35 U.S.C. § 202(e) also authorizes the recipient to transfer its rights to the Government, which can agree to share royalties similarly as described above.

2. Responsibilities - iEdison. The recipient has responsibilities and duties set forth in the standard patent rights clause, which are not described below. The recipient is expected to comply with all the requirements of the standard patent rights clause and 37 C.F.R. Part 401. Recipients of DOC financial assistance awards are required to submit their disclosures and elections electronically using the Interagency Edison extramural invention reporting system (iEdison) at [www.i Edison.gov](http://www.i Edison.gov). Recipients may obtain a waiver of this electronic submission requirement by providing to DOC compelling reasons for allowing the submission of paper copies of reports related to inventions.

b. Patent Notification Procedures.

Pursuant to E.O. 12889, DOC is required to notify the owner of any valid patent covering technology whenever the DOC or its financial assistance recipients, without making a patent search, knows (or has demonstrable reasonable grounds to know) that technology covered by a valid United States patent has been or will be used without a license from the owner. To ensure proper notification, if the recipient uses or has used patented technology under this award without a license or permission from the owner, the recipient must notify the Grants Officer.

This notice does not necessarily mean that the Government authorizes and consents to any copyright or patent infringement occurring under the financial assistance award.

c. Data, Databases, and Software.

The rights to any work produced or purchased under a DOC Federal financial assistance award are determined by 15 C.F.R. § 24.34, for State and Local Governments, and 15 C.F.R. § 14.36, for Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, Other Non-Profit, and Commercial Organizations. Such works may include data, databases or software. The recipient owns any work produced or purchased under a DOC Federal financial assistance award subject to DOC's right to obtain, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the work or authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the data for Government purposes.

d. Copyright.

The recipient may copyright any work produced under a DOC Federal financial assistance award subject to DOC's royalty-free nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish or otherwise use the work, or authorize others to do so for Government purposes. Works jointly authored by DOC and recipient employees may be copyrighted but only the part authored by the recipient is protected because, under 17 U.S.C. § 105, works produced by Government employees are not copyrightable in the United States. On occasion, DOC may require the recipient to transfer to DOC its copyright in a particular work for government purposes or when DOC is undertaking the primary dissemination of the work. Ownership of copyright by the Government through assignment is permitted by 17 U.S.C. § 105.

## **.05 Increasing Seat Belt Use in the United States**

Pursuant to E.O. 13043, recipients should encourage employees and contractors to enforce on-the-job seat belt policies and programs when operating company-owned, rented, or personally owned vehicles.

## **.06 Research Involving Human Subjects**

- a. All proposed research involving human subjects must be conducted in accordance with 15 C.F.R. Part 27, "Protection of Human Subjects." No research involving human subjects is permitted under this award unless expressly authorized by special award condition, or otherwise in writing by the Grants Officer.
- b. Federal policy defines a human subject as a living individual about whom an investigator conducting research obtains (1) data through intervention or interaction with the individual, or (2) identifiable private information. Research means a systematic investigation, including research development, testing and evaluation, designed to develop or contribute to generalizable knowledge.
- c. DOC regulations at 15 C.F.R. Part 27 require that recipients maintain appropriate policies and procedures for the protection of human subjects. In the event it becomes evident that human subjects may be involved in this project, the recipient shall submit appropriate documentation to the Federal Program Officer for approval by the appropriate DOC officials. This documentation may include:

1. Documentation establishing approval of the project by an institutional review board (IRB) approved for Federal-wide use under Department of Health and Human Services guidelines (*see also* 15 C.F.R. § 27.103);
  2. Documentation to support an exemption for the project under 15 C.F.R. § 27.101(b);
  3. Documentation to support deferral for an exemption or IRB review under 15 C.F.R. § 27.118;
  4. Documentation of IRB approval of any modification to a prior approved protocol or to an informed consent form.
- d. No work involving human subjects may be undertaken, conducted, or costs incurred and/or charged for human subjects research, until the appropriate documentation is approved in writing by the Grants Officer. Notwithstanding this prohibition, work may be initiated or costs incurred and/or charged to the project for protocol or instrument development related to human subjects research.

#### **.07 Federal Employee Expenses**

Federal agencies are generally barred from accepting funds from a recipient to pay transportation, travel, or other expenses for any Federal employee. Use of award funds (Federal or non-Federal) or the recipient's provision of in-kind goods or services, for the purposes of transportation, travel, or any other expenses for any Federal employee may raise appropriation augmentation issues. In addition, DOC policy prohibits the acceptance of gifts, including travel payments for Federal employees, from recipients or applicants regardless of the source.

#### **.08 Minority Serving Institutions Initiative**

Pursuant to E.O.s 13555 (“White House Initiative on Educational Excellence for Hispanics”), 13270 (“Tribal Colleges and Universities”), and 13532 (“Promoting Excellence, Innovation, and Sustainability at Historically Black Colleges and Universities”), DOC is strongly committed to broadening the participation of minority serving institutions (MSIs) in its financial assistance programs. DOC's goals include achieving full participation of MSIs in order to advance the development of human potential, strengthen the Nation's capacity to provide high-quality education, and increase opportunities for MSIs to participate in and benefit from Federal financial assistance programs. DOC encourages all applicants and recipients to include meaningful participation of MSIs. Institutions eligible to be considered MSIs are listed on the Department of Education website.

#### **.09 Research Misconduct**

The DOC adopts, and applies to financial assistance awards for research, the Federal Policy on Research Misconduct (Federal Policy) issued by the Executive Office of the President's Office of Science and Technology Policy on December 6, 2000 (65 Fed. Reg. 76260 (2000)). As

provided for in the Federal Policy, research misconduct refers to the fabrication, falsification, or plagiarism in proposing, performing, or reviewing research, or in reporting research results. Research misconduct does not include honest errors or differences of opinion. Recipient organizations that conduct extramural research funded by DOC must foster an atmosphere conducive to the responsible conduct of sponsored research by safeguarding against and resolving allegations of research misconduct. Recipient organizations also have the primary responsibility to prevent, detect, and investigate allegations of research misconduct and, for this purpose, may rely on their internal policies and procedures, as appropriate, to do so. Federal award funds expended on an activity that is determined to be invalid or unreliable because of research misconduct may result in appropriate enforcement action under the award, up to and including award termination and possible suspension or debarment. The DOC requires that any allegation that contains sufficient information to proceed with an inquiry be submitted to the Grants Officer, who will also notify the OIG of such allegation. Once the recipient organization has investigated the allegation, it will submit its findings to the Grants Officer. The DOC may accept the recipient's findings or proceed with its own investigation. The Grants Officer shall inform the recipient of the DOC's final determination.

## **.10 Publications, Videos and Acknowledgment of Sponsorship**

- a. Publication of results or findings in appropriate professional journals and production of video or other media is encouraged as an important method of recording, reporting and otherwise disseminating information and expanding public access to federally-funded projects (*e.g.*, scientific research).
- b. Recipients may be required to submit a copy of any publication materials, including but not limited to print, recorded or Internet materials, to the funding agency.
- c. When releasing information related to a funded project, recipients must include a statement that the project or effort undertaken was or is sponsored by DOC.
- d. Recipients are responsible for assuring that every publication of material based on, developed under, or otherwise produced under a DOC financial assistance award, except scientific articles or papers appearing in scientific, technical or professional journals, contains the following disclaimer or other disclaimer approved by the Grants Officer:

*This [report/video/etc.] was prepared by [recipient name] using Federal funds under award [number] from [name of operating unit], U.S. Department of Commerce. The statements, findings, conclusions, and recommendations are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the [name of operating unit] or the U.S. Department of Commerce.*

## **.11 Care and Use of Live Vertebrate Animals**

Recipients must comply with the Laboratory Animal Welfare Act of 1966, as amended, (Pub. L. No. 89-544, 7 U.S.C. § 2131 *et seq.*) (animal acquisition, transport, care, handling, and

use in projects), and implementing regulations, 9 C.F.R. Parts 1, 2, and 3; the Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. § 1531 *et seq.*); Marine Mammal Protection Act (16 U.S.C. § 1361 *et seq.*) (taking possession, transport, purchase, sale, export or import of wildlife and plants); the Nonindigenous Aquatic Nuisance Prevention and Control Act (16 U.S.C. § 4701 *et seq.*) (ensure preventive measures are taken or that probable harm of using species is minimal if there is an escape or release); and all other applicable statutes pertaining to the care, handling, and treatment of warm-blooded animals held for research, teaching, or other activities supported by Federal financial assistance. No research involving vertebrate animals is permitted under any DOC financial assistance award unless authorized by the Grants Officer.

## **.12 Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12**

If the performance of a grant award requires recipient organization personnel to have routine access to Federally-controlled facilities and/or Federally-controlled information systems (for purpose of this term “routine access” is defined as more than 180 days), such personnel must undergo the personal identity verification credential process. In the case of foreign nationals, the DOC will conduct a check with U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services’ (USCIS) Verification Division, a component of the Department of Homeland Security (DHS), to ensure the individual is in a lawful immigration status and that he or she is eligible for employment within the United States. Any items or services delivered under a financial assistance award shall comply with DOC personal identity verification procedures that implement Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12, “Policy for a Common Identification Standard for Federal Employees and Contractors”, FIPS PUB 201, and OMB Memorandum M-05-24. The recipient shall ensure that its subrecipients and contractors (at all tiers) performing work under this award comply with the requirements contained in this term. The Grants Officer may delay final payment under an award if the subrecipient or contractor fails to comply with the requirements listed in the term below. The recipient shall insert the following term in all subawards and contracts when the subaward recipient or contractor is required to have routine physical access to a Federally-controlled facility or routine access to a Federally-controlled information system:

- a. *The subrecipient or contractor shall comply with DOC personal identity verification procedures identified in the subaward or contract that implement Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12 (HSPD-12), Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Guidance M-05-24, as amended, and Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS PUB) Number 201, as amended, for all employees under this subaward or contract who require routine physical access to a Federally-controlled facility or routine access to a Federally-controlled information system.*
- b. *The subrecipient or contractor shall account for all forms of Government-provided identification issued to the subrecipient or contractor employees in connection with performance under this subaward or contract. The subrecipient or contractor shall return such identification to the issuing agency at the earliest of any of the following, unless otherwise determined by DOC: (1) When no longer needed for subaward or contract performance; (2) Upon completion of the subrecipient or contractor employee’s employment; (3) Upon subaward or contract completion or termination.*

### **.13 Compliance with Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security Export Administration Regulations**

- a. This clause applies to the extent that this financial assistance award involves access to export-controlled items.
- b. In performing this financial assistance award, the recipient may gain access to items subject to export control (export-controlled items) under the Export Administration Regulations (EAR). The recipient is responsible for compliance with all applicable laws and regulations regarding export-controlled items, including the EAR's deemed exports and reexports provisions. The recipient shall establish and maintain effective export compliance procedures at DOC and non-DOC facilities throughout performance of the financial assistance award. At a minimum, these export compliance procedures must include adequate controls of physical, verbal, visual, and electronic access to export-controlled items, including by foreign nationals.
- c. Definitions
  - 1. Export-controlled items. Items (commodities, software, or technology), that are subject to the EAR (15 C.F.R. §§ 730-774), implemented by the DOC's Bureau of Industry and Security. These are generally known as "dual-use" items, items with a military and commercial application.
  - 2. Deemed Export/Reexport. The EAR defines a deemed export as a release of export-controlled items (specifically, technology or source code) to a foreign national in the U.S. Such release is "deemed" to be an export to the home country of the foreign national. 15 C.F.R. § 734.2(b)(2)(ii). A release may take the form of visual inspection, oral exchange of information, or the application abroad of knowledge or technical experience acquired in the U.S. If such a release occurs abroad, it is considered a deemed reexport to the foreign national's home country. Licenses from DOC may be required for deemed exports or reexports.
- d. The recipient shall control access to all export-controlled items that it possesses or that comes into its possession in performance of this financial assistance award, to ensure that access to, or release of, such items are restricted, or licensed, as required by applicable Federal laws, E.O.s, and/or regulations, including the EAR.
- e. As applicable, recipient personnel and associates at DOC sites will be informed of any procedures to identify and protect export-controlled items.
- f. To the extent the recipient wishes to provide foreign nationals with access to export-controlled items, the recipient shall be responsible for obtaining any necessary licenses, including licenses required under the EAR for deemed exports or deemed reexports.

- g. Nothing in the terms of this financial assistance award is intended to change, supersede, or waive the requirements of applicable Federal laws, E.O.s or regulations.
- h. Compliance with this term will not satisfy any legal obligations the recipient may have regarding items that may be subject to export controls administered by other agencies such as the Department of State, which has jurisdiction over exports of munitions items subject to the International Traffic in Arms Regulations (ITAR) (22 C.F.R. §§ 120-130), including releases of such items to foreign nationals.
- i. The recipient shall include this clause, including this paragraph (i), in all lower tier transactions (subawards, contracts, and subcontracts) under this financial assistance award that may involve access to export-controlled items.

**.14 The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (22 U.S.C. 7104(g)), as amended, and the implementing regulations at 2 C.F.R. part 175**

The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 authorizes termination of financial assistance provided to a private entity, without penalty to the Federal Government, if the recipient or subrecipient engages in certain activities related to trafficking in persons. The Department of Commerce hereby incorporates the following award term required by 2 C.F.R. § 175.15(b). *See* <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2012-title2-vol1/pdf/CFR-2012-title2-vol1-sec175-15.pdf>.

Award Term from 2 C.F.R. § 175.15(b): Trafficking in persons.

- a. Provisions applicable to a recipient that is a private entity.
  - 1. You as the recipient, your employees, subrecipients under this award, and subrecipients' employees may not—
    - i. Engage in severe forms of trafficking in persons during the period of time that the award is in effect;
    - ii. Procure a commercial sex act during the period of time that the award is in effect; or
    - iii. Use forced labor in the performance of the award or subawards under the award.
  - 2. We as the Federal awarding agency may unilaterally terminate this award, without penalty, if you or a subrecipient that is a private entity —
    - i. Is determined to have violated a prohibition in paragraph a.1 of this award term; or
    - ii. Has an employee who is determined by the agency official authorized to terminate the award to have violated a prohibition in paragraph a.1 of this award term through conduct that is either— (A) Associated with performance under this award; or (B) Imputed to you or the subrecipient using the standards and due process for imputing the conduct of an individual to an organization that are provided in 2 C.F.R. Part 180, “OMB Guidelines to Agencies on

Governmentwide Debarment and Suspension (Nonprocurement),” as implemented by DOC at 2 C.F.R. Part 1326, “Nonprocurement Debarment and Suspension.”

- b. Provision applicable to a recipient other than a private entity. We as the Federal awarding agency may unilaterally terminate this award, without penalty, if a subrecipient that is a private entity—
  1. Is determined to have violated an applicable prohibition in paragraph a.1 of this award term; or
  2. Has an employee who is determined by the agency official authorized to terminate the award to have violated an applicable prohibition in paragraph a.1 of this award term through conduct that is either—
    - i. Associated with performance under this award; or
    - ii. Imputed to the subrecipient using the standards and due process for imputing the conduct of an individual to an organization that are provided in 2 C.F.R. Part 180, “OMB Guidelines to Agencies on Governmentwide Debarment and Suspension (Nonprocurement),” as implemented by DOC at 2 C.F.R. Part 1326, “Nonprocurement Debarment and Suspension.”
- c. Provisions applicable to any recipient.
  1. You must inform us immediately of any information you receive from any source alleging a violation of a prohibition in paragraph a.1 of this award term.
  2. Our right to terminate unilaterally that is described in paragraph a.2 or b of this section:
    - i. Implements section 106(g) of the Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (TVPA), as amended (22 U.S.C. 7104(g)), and
    - ii. Is in addition to all other remedies for noncompliance that are available to us under this award.
  3. You must include the requirements of paragraph a.1 of this award term in any subaward you make to a private entity.
- d. Definitions. For purposes of this award term:
  1. Employee means either:
    - i. An individual employed by you or a subrecipient who is engaged in the performance of the project or program under this award; or
    - ii. Another person engaged in the performance of the project or program under this award and not compensated by you including, but not limited to, a volunteer

or individual whose services are contributed by a third party as an in-kind contribution toward cost sharing or matching requirements.

2. Forced labor means: labor obtained by any of the following methods: the recruitment, harboring, transportation, provision, or obtaining of a person for labor or services, through the use of force, fraud, or coercion for the purpose of subjection to involuntary servitude, peonage, debt bondage, or slavery.
3. Private entity:
  - i. Means any entity other than a State, local government, Indian tribe, or foreign public entity, as those terms are defined in 2 CFR 175.25;
  - ii. Includes: (A) A nonprofit organization, including any nonprofit institution of higher education, hospital, or tribal organization other than one included in the definition of Indian tribe at 2 CFR 175.25(b); and (B) A for-profit organization.
4. “Severe forms of trafficking in persons,” “commercial sex act,” and “coercion” have the meanings given at section 103 of the TVPA, as amended (22 U.S.C. 7102).

## **.15 The Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 (Pub. L. No. 109-282, 31 USCA § 6101 note)**

- a. Searchable Website Requirements. The Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 (FFATA) requires information on Federal awards (Federal financial assistance and expenditures) be made available to the public via a single, searchable website. This information is available at [www.USASpending.gov](http://www.USASpending.gov). Recipients and subrecipients must include the following required data elements in their application:
  - Name of entity receiving award;
  - Award amount;
  - Transaction type, funding agency, Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance Number, and descriptive award title;
  - Location of entity, primary location of performance (City/State/Congressional District/Country; and
  - Unique identifier of entity.
- b. Reporting Subawards and Executive Compensation. Prime grant recipients awarded a new Federal grant greater than or equal to \$25,000 on or after October 1, 2010, other than those funded by the Recovery Act, are subject to FFATA subaward reporting requirements as outlined in the OMB guidance issued August 27, 2010. The prime recipient is required to file a FFATA subaward report by the end of the month following the month in which the prime recipient awards any sub-grant greater than or equal to \$25,000. See Pub. L. No. 109-282, as amended by section 6202(a) of Pub. L. No. 110-252 (*see* 31 U.S.C. 6101 note). The reporting requirements are located in Appendix A of 2 C.F.R. Part 170 and are available on

GPO's FDsys website: <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2011-title2-vol1/pdf/CFR-2011-title2-vol1-part170-appA.pdf>.

Award Term from Appendix A of 2 C.F.R. Part 170:

a. Reporting of first-tier subawards.

1. **Applicability.** Unless you are exempt as provided in paragraph d. of this award term, you must report each action that obligates \$25,000 or more in Federal funds that does not include Recovery funds (as defined in section 1512(a)(2) of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, Pub. L. 111–5) for a subaward to an entity (see definitions in paragraph e. of this award term).
2. **Where and when to report.**
  - i. You must report each obligating action described in paragraph a.1. of this award term to <http://www.fsrc.gov>.
  - ii. For subaward information, report no later than the end of the month following the month in which the obligation was made. (For example, if the obligation was made on November 7, 2010, the obligation must be reported by no later than December 31, 2010.)
3. **What to report.** You must report the information about each obligating action that the submission instructions posted at <http://www.fsrc.gov> specify.

b. Reporting Total Compensation of Recipient Executives.

1. **Applicability and what to report.** You must report total compensation for each of your five most highly compensated executives for the preceding completed fiscal year, if—
  - i. the total Federal funding authorized to date under this award is \$25,000 or more;
  - ii. in the preceding fiscal year, you received—
    - (A) 80 percent or more of your annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and
    - (B) \$25,000,000 or more in annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and
  - iii. The public does not have access to information about the compensation of the executives through periodic reports filed under section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)) or section 6104 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. (To determine if the public has access to the compensation information, see the U.S. Security and Exchange Commission total compensation filings at <http://www.sec.gov/answers/execomp.htm>.)

2. Where and when to report. You must report executive total compensation described in paragraph b.1. of this award term:
  - i. As part of your registration profile at <http://www.ccr.gov>.
  - ii. By the end of the month following the month in which this award is made, and annually thereafter.
- c. Reporting of Total Compensation of Subrecipient Executives.
  1. Applicability and what to report. Unless you are exempt as provided in paragraph d. of this award term, for each first-tier subrecipient under this award, you shall report the names and total compensation of each of the subrecipient's five most highly compensated executives for the subrecipient's preceding completed fiscal year, if—
    - i. in the subrecipient's preceding fiscal year, the subrecipient received—
      - (A) 80 percent or more of its annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and
      - (B) \$25,000,000 or more in annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts), and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act (and subawards); and
    - ii. The public does not have access to information about the compensation of the executives through periodic reports filed under section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)) or section 6104 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. (To determine if the public has access to the compensation information, see the U.S. Security and Exchange Commission total compensation filings at <http://www.sec.gov/answers/execomp.htm>.)
  2. Where and when to report. You must report subrecipient executive total compensation described in paragraph c.1. of this award term:
    - i. To the recipient.
    - ii. By the end of the month following the month during which you make the subaward. For example, if a subaward is obligated on any date during the month of October of a given year (i.e., between October 1 and 31), you must report any required compensation information of the subrecipient by November 30 of that year.
- d. Exemptions. If, in the previous tax year, you had gross income, from all sources, under \$300,000, you are exempt from the requirements to report: i. Subawards, and ii. The total compensation of the five most highly compensated executives of any subrecipient.
- e. Definitions. For purposes of this award term:
  1. Entity means all of the following, as defined in 2 CFR part 25:
    - i. A Governmental organization, which is a State, local government, or Indian tribe;
    - ii. A foreign public entity;

- iii. A domestic or foreign nonprofit organization;
  - iv. A domestic or foreign for-profit organization;
  - v. A Federal agency, but only as a subrecipient under an award or subaward to a non-Federal entity.
2. Executive means officers, managing partners, or any other employees in management positions.
3. Subaward:
- i. This term means a legal instrument to provide support for the performance of any portion of the substantive project or program for which you received this award and that you as the recipient award to an eligible subrecipient.
  - ii. The term does not include your procurement of property and services needed to carry out the project or program (for further explanation, see Sec. \_\_.210 of the attachment to OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations").
  - iii. A subaward may be provided through any legal agreement, including an agreement that you or a subrecipient considers a contract.
4. Subrecipient means an entity that:
- i. Receives a subaward from you (the recipient) under this award; and
  - ii. Is accountable to you for the use of the Federal funds provided by the subaward.
5. Total compensation means the cash and noncash dollar value earned by the executive during the recipient's or subrecipient's preceding fiscal year and includes the following (for more information see 17 CFR 229.402(c)(2)):
- i. Salary and bonus.
  - ii. Awards of stock, stock options, and stock appreciation rights. Use the dollar amount recognized for financial statement reporting purposes with respect to the fiscal year in accordance with the Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (Revised 2004) (FAS 123R), Shared Based Payments.
  - iii. Earnings for services under non-equity incentive plans. This does not include group life, health, hospitalization or medical reimbursement plans that do not discriminate in favor of executives, and are available generally to all salaried employees.
  - iv. Change in pension value. This is the change in present value of defined benefit and actuarial pension plans.
  - v. Above-market earnings on deferred compensation which is not tax-qualified.
  - vi. Other compensation, if the aggregate value of all such other compensation (e.g. severance, termination payments, value of life insurance paid on behalf of the employee, perquisites or property) for the executive exceeds \$10,000.

c. Central Contractor Registration (CCR) and Universal Identifier requirements.

1. Requirement for Central Contractor Registration (CCR) Unless you are exempted from this requirement under 2 C.F.R. § 25.110, you as the recipient must maintain the currency of your information in the CCR until you submit the final financial report required under this award or receive the final payment, whichever is later. This requires that you review and update the information at least annually after the initial registration, and more frequently if required by changes in your information or another award term.
2. Requirement for Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) Numbers If you are authorized to make subawards under this award, you:
  - i. Must notify potential subrecipients that no entity (see definition in paragraph C of this award term) may receive a subaward from you unless the entity has provided its DUNS number to you.
  - ii. May not make a subaward to an entity unless the entity has provided its DUNS number to you.
3. Definitions for purposes of this award term:
  - i. Central Contractor Registration (CCR) means the Federal repository into which an entity must provide information required for the conduct of business as a recipient. Additional information about registration procedures may be found at the System for Award Management Internet site (currently at <https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/>).
  - ii. Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number means the nine-digit number established and assigned by Dun and Bradstreet, Inc. (D&B) to uniquely identify business entities. A DUNS number may be obtained from D&B by telephone (currently 866-705-5711) or the Internet (currently at <http://fedgov.dnb.com/webform>).
  - iii. Entity, as it is used in this award term, means all of the following, as defined at 2 C.F.R. part 25, subpart C:
    - (A) A Governmental organization, which is a State, local government, or Indian Tribe;
    - (B) A foreign public entity;
    - (C) A domestic or foreign nonprofit organization;
    - (D) A domestic or foreign for-profit organization; and

(E) A Federal agency, but only as a subrecipient under an award or subaward to a non-Federal entity.

iv. Subaward:

(A) This term means a legal instrument to provide support for the performance of any portion of the substantive project or program for which you received this award and that you as the recipient award to an eligible subrecipient.

(B) The term does not include your procurement of property and services needed to carry out the project or program (for further explanation, *see* Sec. \_\_.210 of the attachment to OMB Circular A-133, “Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations”).

(C) A subaward may be provided through any legal agreement, including an agreement that you consider a contract.

v. Subrecipient means an entity that:

(A) Receives a subaward from you under this award; and

(B) Is accountable to you for the use of the Federal funds provided by the subaward.

## **.16 Federal Financial Assistance Planning During a Funding Hiatus or Government Shutdown**

This term sets forth initial guidance that will be implemented for Federal assistance awards in the event of a lapse in appropriations, or a government shutdown. The Grants Officer may issue further guidance prior to an anticipated shutdown.

- a. Unless there is an actual rescission of funds for specific grant obligations, recipients of Federal financial assistance awards for which funds have been obligated generally will be able to continue to perform and incur allowable expenses under the award during a funding hiatus. Recipients are advised that ongoing activities by Federal employees involved in grant administration (including payment processing) or similar operational and administrative work cannot continue when there is a funding lapse. Therefore, there may be delays, including payment processing delays, in the event of a shutdown.
- b. All award actions will be delayed during a government shutdown; if it appears that a recipient’s performance under a grant or cooperative agreement will require agency involvement, direction, or clearance during the period of a possible government shutdown, the Program Officer or Grants Officer, as appropriate, may attempt to provide such involvement, direction, or clearance prior to the shutdown or advise recipients that such

involvement, direction, or clearance will not be forthcoming during the shutdown. Accordingly, recipients whose ability to withdraw funds is subject to prior agency approval, which in general are recipients that have been designated high risk, recipients of construction awards, or are otherwise limited to reimbursements or subject to agency review, will be able draw funds down from the relevant Automatic Standard Application for Payment (ASAP) account only if agency approval is given and coded into ASAP prior to any government shutdown or closure. This limitation may not be lifted during a government shutdown. Recipients should plan to work with the Grants Officer to request prior approvals in advance of a shutdown wherever possible. Recipients whose authority to draw down award funds is restricted may decide to suspend work until the government reopens.

- c. The ASAP system should remain operational during a government shutdown. Recipients that do not require any grant office or agency approval to draw down advance funds from their ASAP accounts should be able to do so during a shutdown. The 30-day limitation on the drawdown of advance funds will still apply notwithstanding a government shutdown and advanced funds held for more than 30 days will have to be returned with interest.

## APPENDIX A: Summary of Changes to the 2008 Standard Terms and Conditions

Section	Page	Summary of Changes
<b>PREFACE</b>	4	Administrative changes.
<b>A. FINANCIAL REQUIREMENTS</b>	4	No changes to heading.
<b>.01 Financial Reports</b>	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A.01.a. Changed "Form SF-269" to the current "Form SF-425".</li> <li>A.01.b. Changed the preferred method of submission to electronic submission.</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Award Payments</b>	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A.02.b. Includes reference to the submission of Form SF-3881, "ACH Vendor Miscellaneous Payment Enrollment Form" to be able to receive payment via a Form SF-270 request.</li> </ul>
<b>.03 Federal and Non-Federal Sharing</b>	5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A.03.b. Added a clarification on the record keeping requirement for cost-share.</li> </ul>
<b>.04 Budget Changes and Transfer of Funds among Categories</b>	6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added DOC-specific regulation cites for transfers among direct cost categories.</li> </ul>
<b>.05 Indirect Costs and Facilities and Administrative Costs</b>	6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change to title of heading to include both "indirect costs" and "F&amp;A Costs."</li> <li>A.05. Changed "start date" to "award date" for consistency with regulations and existing DOC policy.</li> <li>A.05.a. Changed "Indirect Costs" to "Facilities and Administrative Costs" in line with the regulations.</li> <li>A.05.c. Updated "cognizant Federal agency" section to reflect OMB guidance; added a reference to the "Commercial Organization" regulations at 48 C.F.R. Part 42; and updated the link to the DOL cite.</li> <li>A.05.f. Revisions to allocable indirect cost reimbursement.</li> </ul>
<b>.06 Incurring Costs or Obligating Federal Funds beyond the Expiration Date</b>	9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A.06. Change "award period" to "project period" for consistency with regulations and existing DOC policy.</li> <li>A.06.a. Added language stating that the Grants Officer may approve extensions beyond 90-day closeout period.</li> </ul>
<b>.07 Tax Refunds</b>	9	Administrative changes.
<b>B. PROGRAMMATIC REQUIREMENTS</b>	9	No changes to heading.
<b>.01 Performance (Technical) Reports</b>	9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B.01.a. Change preferred form of report submission to electronic submission, and set default submission dates to correspond with Federal Financial Report submissions.</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Unsatisfactory Performance</b>	10	No changes to the term.
<b>.03 Programmatic Changes</b>	10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B.03. Reports must be submitted to the Program Officer who forwards the request to the Grants Officer.</li> </ul>
<b>.04 Other Federal Awards with Similar Programmatic Activities</b>	10	No changes to the term.
<b>.05 Non-Compliance with Award Provisions</b>	10	No changes to the term.
<b>.06 Prohibition against Assignment by the Recipient</b>	10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B.06. Clarified that the written approval must be from the Grants Officer.</li> </ul>
<b>.07 Disclaimer Provisions</b>	11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B.07.a. Removed "other losses resulting in any way from the performance of this award or any" language to clarify that the disclaimer applies to the performance of the award and all subawards or subcontracts.</li> </ul>
<b>C. NON-DISCRIMINATION REQUIREMENTS</b>	11	No changes to heading.

Section	Page	Summary of Changes
<b>.01 Statutory Provisionss</b>	11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>C.01.d. Added the new award term for the "Revised ADA Standards for Accessible Design for Construction Awards."</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Other Provisions</b>	12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>C.02.b. Provided additional explanation for LEP requirements.</li> </ul>
<b>.03 Title VII Exemption for Religious Organizations</b>	13	No changes to the term.
<b>D. AUDITS</b>	13	No changes to heading.
<b>.01 Organization-Wide, Program-Specific, and Project Audits</b>	13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>D.01.a. Change submission preference to electronic submission.</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Audit Resolution Process</b>	14	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>D.02.b.5. Added language emphasizing that no other administrative appeals are available in DOC.</li> </ul>
<b>E. DEBTS</b>	15	No changes to heading.
<b>.01 Payment of Debts Owed the Federal Government</b>	15	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E.01. Corrected the citation for the debt collection procedures in the regs and clarified procedures.</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Late Payment Charges</b>	16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E.02.a. Added links to the CVFR and Federal Register publication.</li> <li>E.02.b. Updated penalty charges information.</li> <li>E.02.c. Updated administrative charges information.</li> </ul>
<b>.03 Barring Delinquent Federal Debtors from Obtaining Federal Loans or Loan Insurance Guarantees</b>	16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E.03. Added citation to new debt collection procedures regs.</li> </ul>
<b>.04 Effect of Judgment Lien on Eligibility for Federal Grants, Loans, or Programs</b>	16	No changes to the term.
<b>F. INDIVIDUAL BACKGROUND SCREENING</b>	--	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This section and related requirements are revoked and Form CD-346 is rescinded.</li> </ul>
<b>F. GOVERNMENTWIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION</b>	16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening." This is now section "F."</li> <li>Changed citation to reflect the relocation of these procedures to 2 C.F.R. Part 1326.</li> </ul>
<b>G. DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE</b>	17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening." This is now section "G."</li> <li>Corrected citations for the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 and the "Governmentwide Requirements for Drug-Free Workplace (Financial Assistance)."</li> </ul>
<b>H. LOBBYING RESTRICTIONS</b>	17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening." This is now section "H."</li> </ul>
<b>.01 Statutory Provisions</b>	17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removed the word "generally" to accurately reflect the prohibition against using Federal funds for lobbying.</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Disclosure of Lobbying Activities</b>	17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added language to clarify that the Grants Officer is the individual who receives those forms.</li> </ul>
<b>I. CODES OF CONDUCT AND SUBAWARD, CONTRACT, AND SUBCONTRACT PROVISIONS</b>	17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening." This is now section "I."</li> </ul>
<b>.01 Code of Conduct for Recipients</b>	17	No changes to the term.
<b>.02 Applicability of Award Provisions to Subrecipients</b>	18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added "and all associated terms and conditions" to the other requirements the recipient must include in awards to subrecipients.</li> <li>Administrative changes to terminology.</li> </ul>
<b>.03 Competition and Codes of Conduct for Subawards</b>	18	No changes to this term

Section	Page	Summary of Changes
<b>.04 Applicability of Provisions to Subawards, Contracts, and Subcontracts</b>	19	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening."</li> </ul>
<b>.05 Small Businesses, Minority Business Enterprises and Women's Business Enterprises</b>	20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed heading to "Small Businesses, Minority Business Enterprises and Women's Business Enterprises" to accurately reflect the regs.</li> <li>Changed language in the term to reflect the heading change and track regs.</li> </ul>
<b>.06 Subaward and/or Contract to a Federal Agency</b>	20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Old section J.06.b. Added the language: "The Grants Officer must forward all requests to the Federal Assistance Law Division in the Office of the Assistant General Counsel for Finance and Litigation for review prior to making the final determination. The Grants Officer will notify the recipient in writing of the final determination" to ensure clearance by legal counsel.</li> </ul>
<b>J. PROPERTY</b>	20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening." This is now section "J."</li> </ul>
<b>.01 Standards</b>	20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added in citations to 2 C.F.R. Parts 14 and 24.</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Real and Personal Property</b>	21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed section heading from "Real Property" to "Real and Personal Property."</li> <li>Substantial revisions to the section.</li> </ul>
<b>K. ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS</b>	21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section "F." Individual Background Screening." This is now section "K."</li> </ul>
<b>.01 The National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. § 4321 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	22	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed heading citation and clarification of NEPA requirements for recipients.</li> </ul>
<b><u>NEW</u> .02 National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. § 470 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	22	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added in a term about the National Historic Preservation Act requirements for recipients.</li> </ul>
<b>.03 Executive Order 11988 ("Floodplain Management") and Executive Order 11990 ("Protection of Wetlands")</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.03.</li> <li>Changed heading citation for clarity.</li> </ul>
<b>.04 Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. § 7401 <i>et seq.</i>), Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. § 1251 <i>et seq.</i>) (Clean Water Act), and Executive Order 11738 ("Providing for administration of the Clean Air Act and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act with respect to Federal contracts, grants or loans")</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.04.</li> <li>Changed heading citation for clarity.</li> <li>Added link to the EPA List of Violating Facilities.</li> <li>Updated C.F.R. citation.</li> </ul>
<b>.05 The Flood Disaster Protection Act (42 U.S.C. § 4002 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.05.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>
<b>.06 The Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. § 1531 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.06.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>
<b>.07 The Coastal Zone Management Act (16 U.S.C. § 1451 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.07.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>
<b>.08 The Coastal Barriers Resources Act (16 U.S.C. § 3501 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.08.</li> <li>Clarified that only in certain circumstances can Federal funding be provided for actions within a Coastal Barrier System.</li> </ul>
<b>.09 The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act (16 U.S.C. § 1271 <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.09.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>
<b>.10 The Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 300f <i>et seq.</i>)</b>	22	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.10.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>

Section	Page	Summary of Changes
<b>.11 The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (42 U.S.C. § 6901 et seq.)</b>	24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.11.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>
<b>.12 The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (Superfund) (42 U.S.C. § 9601 et seq.) and the Community Environmental Response Facilitation Act (41 U.S.C. § 11001 et seq.)</b>	24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.12.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> <li>Added language specifying reporting requirements.</li> </ul>
<b>.13 Executive Order 12898 (“Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low Income Populations”)</b>	24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the new NHPA term, this is now K.13.</li> <li>Updated heading citation.</li> </ul>
<b>L. MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS</b>	24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering of heading to reflect the removal of section “F.” Individual Background Screening.” This is now section “L.”</li> </ul>
<b>.01 Criminal and Prohibited Activities</b>	24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Old M.01.d. Updated citations and added language expressly stating that “The Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act also applies to contractors and subcontractors pursuant to 40 U.S.C. § 3145.”</li> </ul>
<b>.02 Foreign Travel</b>	25	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated section on the bilateral or multilateral treaty exception and links to Department of State website for specific agreements.</li> <li>Added language clarifying that the Fly America Act applies to all award funds, not only Federal award funds.</li> </ul>
<b>.03 American-Made Equipment and Products</b>	26	No changes to term.
<b>.04 Intellectual Property Rights</b>	26	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>L.04.a.1(a). Updates to the "Recipient" section: The recipient's ownership rights are subject to the Government's nonexclusive, [added] "nontransferable, irrevocable," paid-up license and other rights.</li> <li>(b). Updates the "Department" section to add that DOC may request assignment of all rights when a recipient "elects to not retain title own, fails to disclose the invention to the agency within the required time limits."</li> <li>M.04.a.2. Added link to iEdison website and added information about how a recipient may obtain a waiver of the electronic submission requirement.</li> </ul>
<b>.05 Increasing Seat Belt Use in the United States</b>	28	No changes to heading or term.
<b>.06 Research Involving Human Subjects</b>	28	No changes to heading or term.
<b>.07 Federal Employee Expenses</b>	29	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removed "unless specifically approved in the terms of the award" for clarify the term to emphasize that recipients cannot pay for federal employee expenses.</li> </ul>
<b>M.08 Preservation of Open Competition and Government Neutrality Towards Government Contractors' Labor Relations on Federal and Federally Funded Construction Projects.</b>	--	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removed this term because the relevant part of the authorizing Executive Order was revoked by a later Executive Order.</li> </ul>
<b>.08 Minority Serving Institutions Initiative</b>	29	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.08.</li> <li>Updated references to Executive Orders to reflect the current authorities.</li> </ul>
<b>.09 Research Misconduct</b>	29	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.09.</li> <li>Added additional explanation of recipient responsibilities for preventing, detecting and investigating allegations of research misconduct.</li> </ul>

Section	Page	Summary of Changes
<b>.10 Publications, Videos and Acknowledgment of Sponsorship</b>	30	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.10.</li> <li>Substantive changes to this term include expanding the term to apply to all Federally-funded projects, rather than only "Federally funded research."</li> <li>Updated disclaimer requirement.</li> </ul>
<b>.11 Care and Use of Live Vertebrate Animals</b>	30	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.11.</li> </ul>
<b>.12 Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12</b>	31	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.12.</li> <li>Added a term that recipients must include in all subawards and subcontracts (at all tiers) performing work under the award when the subaward recipient or contractor is required to have routine physical access to a Federally-controlled facility or routine access to a Federally-controlled information system.</li> </ul> <p>Added language allowing the Grants Officer to delay final payment under an award if the subrecipient or contractor fails to comply with the requirements listed in the term.</p>
<b>.13 Compliance with Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security Export Administration Regulations</b>	32	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.13.</li> <li>Old section M.14.a. Updated term to reflect that it applies when the financial assistance involves access to "export-controlled items" rather than "export-controlled information or technology."</li> <li>Old section M.14.c. Updated the definition of "Export-controlled items" and "Deemed Export/Reexport."</li> <li>M.14.f. Added a paragraph on license requirement under EAR.</li> <li>M.14.h. Added disclaimers that compliance with this term does not satisfy any legal obligations the recipient may have regarding items that may be subject to export controls administered by other Agencies (e.g. ITAR).</li> </ul>
<b>.14 The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (22 U.S.C. 7104(g)), as amended, and the implementing regulations at 2 C.F.R. part 175</b>	33	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.14.</li> <li>Added name of the act for clarity to the term.</li> <li>Added citation to regs and added the term from 2 C.F.R. § 175.15(b).</li> </ul>
<b>.15 The Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 (Pub. L. No. 109-282, 31 USCA § 6101 note)</b>	35	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed numbering to reflect the removal of old M.08. This is now L.15.</li> <li>Old section M.14.a. Updated term addressing the "Searchable Website" requirement.</li> <li>Old section M.14.b. Added the "Reporting Subawards and Executive Compensation" term required in 2 C.F.R. Part 170.</li> <li>Old section M.14.c. Added CCR and Universal Identifier Requirements terminology.</li> </ul>
<b><u>NEW</u> L.17 Federal Financial Assistance Planning During a Funding Hiatus or Government Shutdown</b>	40	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added new term addressing procedures for "Federal Financial Assistance Planning During a Funding Hiatus or Government Shutdown."</li> </ul>

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

On September 14, 2010 the Office of Management And Budget issued interim final guidance to agencies to establish requirements for Federal financial assistance applicants, recipients, and subrecipients that are necessary for the implementation of the Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006, hereafter referred to as "the Transparency Act" or "the Act". This interim final guidance provided standard wording for an award term that each agency must include in grant and cooperative agreement awards it makes on or after October 1, 2010, to require recipients to report information about first-tier subawards and executive compensation under only those awards. This implementation of the requirement for reporting of subawards and executive compensation under Federal assistance awards parallels the implementation for subcontracts and executive compensation under Federal procurement contracts, which is in the Federal Acquisition Regulation. This is a new requirement and the language is located in section D of these Administrative Standard Award Conditions.

As you may know, during the Federal Government's Fiscal Year 2006, NOAA implemented NOAA Grants Online. Grants Online is a premier Federal solution for full life-cycle grants management processing. Grants Online allows recipients to: Accept awards electronically, manage user roles for individuals within their organization, submit post-award action requests, financial reports, and performance/progress reports. Grants Online operates in a web environment, and can be accessed anywhere at any time, provided that you have Internet access. You will be required to use an Internet browser to log in and to use Grants Online. **Internet Explorer** is the preferred browser for **PC users**; **FireFox** is the preferred browser for **MAC users**. No software is required for installation. Logins and passwords are required. If you do not have a password, you can contact the Grants Online Help Desk for assistance in obtaining your login credentials.

For more information, e-mail [GrantsOnline.HelpDesk@noaa.gov](mailto:GrantsOnline.HelpDesk@noaa.gov) or call the Help Desk at 301-444-2112 or toll free at 1-877-662-2478 between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. Eastern Time Monday through Friday excluding Federal holidays.

### A. Award Payments – ASAP Enrollment

Your award payments will be made through electronic funds transfers using the U.S. Department of the Treasury's Automated Standard Application for Payments (ASAP) system. Recipients must enroll in ASAP system by first submitting an Organization Profile Change Request via Grants Online, which will include the following requirements:

1. EIN#
2. DUNS#
3. Name of Organization
4. Type of Organization (i.e. Non-profit, For Profit, State etc.)
5. Address
6. Point of Contact
7. Title
8. Point of Contact's Email Address
9. Phone Number

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

Please refer to the NOAA website at:

[http://www.corporateservices.noaa.gov/grantsonline/Process%20Maps/Award\\_and\\_Post\\_Award\\_OverviewOnly.pdf](http://www.corporateservices.noaa.gov/grantsonline/Process%20Maps/Award_and_Post_Award_OverviewOnly.pdf) for additional information.

### B. Financial Reports

Federal Financial Reports (SF-425) are to be completed in NOAA's Grants Online system. Grants Online will notify your organization via email when your reports are available for completion and submission through the Grants Online system. The status of all reports can be seen under "Associated Documents" under the Grants File.

To complete a report, login to NOAA Grants Online at <https://www.GrantsOnline.noaa.gov>, search for the award and navigate to the Grants File overview page. Find the report near the bottom of the page and click on the link to the report to complete the report. For multiple awards that require Federal Financial Reports (SF-425) covering the same period, you may create and submit a multi-award SF-425 from the "Awards" tab. For additional assistance with Grants Online, please review the Recipient Quick Reference Guide available at <http://rdc.noaa.gov/~GrantsOnline/Training>. This site also has additional detailed recipient assistance material. If you are having problems with accessing Grants Online, please contact the Grants Online Help Desk at 1-877-662-2478 or [GrantsOnline.HelpDesk@noaa.gov](mailto:GrantsOnline.HelpDesk@noaa.gov).

1. Federal Financial Report (SF-425) - (final report only)
  - a. A final comprehensive Federal Financial Report must be submitted, within 90 days after award expiration. The report shall cover the entire project period from the start date through the end date of the original award, or approved extended end date of the award, and must include the cumulative total of indirect costs charged to the award.
2. Federal Financial Report (SF-425) - Due semi-annually; reported under the "Federal Cash" line of the report. (This report replaces the SF 272, Cash Transaction Report)
  - a. The SF-425 shall be submitted on a semi-annual basis. If the recipient is reporting on more than one NOAA grant and/or agreement, then the SF-425 attachment must be used.
  - b. Interim semi-annual Federal Financial Reports (SF-425) are due no later than 30 days after the semi-annual reporting periods ending March 31 and September 30 for the entire project period of the award.
  - c. A final Federal Financial Report (SF 425) is due within 90 days after award expiration. The report shall cover the last semi-annual reporting period ending on September 30 or March 31, or a portion thereof, based on the end date or approved extended end date of the award.
  - d. The SF-425 is due for recipients using the Department of Treasury Automated Standard Application for Payments (ASAP) system for payment. If converting to

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

ASAP during the course of the Award, the SF-425 forms will be due as described above starting with the ASAP conversion date

### 3. Request for Advance or Reimbursement (SF-270)

- a. The SF-270 shall NOT be submitted by recipients using the Department of Treasury ASAP system unless specifically directed by a Special Award Condition.
- b. The SF-270 shall be submitted using the NOAA Grants Online system, as reimbursements are necessary for the financial management of the award.
- c. Semi-annual and final Federal Financial Reports (SF-425) are not required if the SF-270 is used.

### C. Performance/Progress Reports

Performance/Progress Reports are to be completed in NOAA's Grants Online System. The Grants Online System will notify your organization through email, when your reports are available for completion and submission through NOAA Grants Online. Recipients are responsible for ensuring all personnel listed on an award have a current email address. The status of reports can be seen under Associated Documents under the Grant File.

To complete your report, login to NOAA Grants Online at <https://www.GrantsOnline.noaa.gov>, search for the award and navigate to the Grants File overview page. Then find the report near the bottom of the page and click on the link to the report to complete it. You must attach the report document for submission, or in the rare cases where there is very little to report, fill out the report in the report comments section. The Federal Program Officer is the authority on the acceptable form and content of Project Progress Reports. For additional assistance with Grants Online, please review the Recipient Quick Reference Guide available at <http://rdc.noaa.gov/~GrantsOnline/Training>. This site also has additional detailed Recipient assistance material. If you are having problems with your access to Grants Online, please contact the Grants Online Help Desk at 1-877-662-2478 or [GrantsOnline.HelpDesk@noaa.gov](mailto:GrantsOnline.HelpDesk@noaa.gov).

- a. Frequency: Performance reports are due on a semi-annual basis, unless otherwise specified in an award condition, no later than 30 days following the end of each six (6) month period from the start date of the original award. The last semi-annual performance report is required. The final report, which summarizes activities conducted during the entire award must be submitted within 90 days following the end date of the project.

### D. Reporting Subawards and Executive Compensation.

- a. **Reporting of first-tier subawards. (Applies only to grant/cooperative agreement awards issued with a new NOAA fiscal year 2011 award number)**

1. Applicability. Unless you are exempt as provided in paragraph d. of this award term, you must report each action that obligates \$25,000 or more in Federal funds that does not include Recovery

**NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions**

funds (as defined in section 1512(a)(2) of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, Pub. L. 111-5) for a subaward to an entity (see definitions in paragraph e. of this award term).

2. Where and when to report.

i. You must report each obligating action described in paragraph a.1. of this award term to <http://www.fsr.gov>.

ii. For subaward information, report no later than the end of the month following the month in which the obligation was made. (For example, if the obligation was made on November 7, 2010, the obligation must be reported by no later than December 31, 2010.)

3. What to report. You must report the information about each obligating action that the submission instructions posted at <http://www.fsr.gov> specify.

**b. Reporting Total Compensation of Recipient Executives.**

1. Applicability and what to report. You must report total compensation for each of your five most highly compensated executives for the preceding completed fiscal year, if--

i. the total Federal funding authorized to date under this award is \$25,000 or more;

ii. in the preceding fiscal year, you received--

(A) 80 percent or more of your annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and

(B) \$25,000,000 or more in annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and

iii. The public does not have access to information about the compensation of the executives through periodic reports filed under section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)) or section 6104 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. (To determine if the public has access to the compensation information, see the U.S. Security and Exchange Commission total compensation filings at <http://www.sec.gov/answers/execomp.htm>.)

2. Where and when to report. You must report executive total compensation described in paragraph b.1. of this award term:

i. As part of your registration profile at <http://www.ccr.gov>.

ii. By the end of the month following the month in which this award is made, and annually thereafter.

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

### c. Reporting of Total Compensation of Subrecipient Executives.

1. Applicability and what to report. Unless you are exempt as provided in paragraph d. of this award term, for each first-tier subrecipient under this award, you shall report the names and total compensation of each of the subrecipient's five most highly compensated executives for the subrecipient's preceding completed fiscal year, if—

i. in the subrecipient's preceding fiscal year, the subrecipient received--

(A) 80 percent or more of its annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and

(B) \$25,000,000 or more in annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts), and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act (and subawards); and

ii. The public does not have access to information about the compensation of the executives through periodic reports filed under section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)) or section 6104 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. (To determine if the public has access to the compensation information, see the U.S. Security and Exchange Commission total compensation filings at <http://www.sec.gov/answers/excomp.htm>.)

2. **Where and when to report.** You must report subrecipient executive total compensation described in paragraph c.1. of this award term:

i. To the recipient.

ii. By the end of the month following the month during which you make the subaward. For example, if a subaward is obligated on any date during the month of October of a given year (i.e., between October 1 and 31), you must report any required compensation information of the subrecipient by November 30 of that year.

### d. Exemptions

If, in the previous tax year, you had gross income, from all sources, under \$300,000, you are exempt from the requirements to report:

i. Subawards, and

ii. The total compensation of the five most highly compensated executives of any subrecipient.

### e. Definitions.

For purposes of this award term:

1. Entity means all of the following, as defined in 2 CFR part 25:

**NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions**

- i. A Governmental organization, which is a State, local government, or Indian tribe;
  - ii. A foreign public entity;
  - iii. A domestic or foreign nonprofit organization;
  - iv. A domestic or foreign for-profit organization;
  - v. A Federal agency, but only as a subrecipient under an award or subaward to a non-Federal entity.
2. Executive means officers, managing partners, or any other employees in management positions.
3. Subaward means:
- i. This term means a legal instrument to provide support for the performance of any portion of the substantive project or program for which you received this award and that you as the recipient award to an eligible subrecipient.
  - ii. The term does not include your procurement of property and services needed to carry out the project or program (for further explanation, see Sec. ---- .210 of the attachment to OMB Circular A-133, ``Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations").
  - iii. A subaward may be provided through any legal agreement, including an agreement that you or a subrecipient considers a contract.
4. Subrecipient means an entity that:
- i. Receives a subaward from you (the recipient) under this award; and
  - ii. Is accountable to you for the use of the Federal funds provided by the subaward.
5. Total compensation means the cash and noncash dollar value earned by the executive during the recipient's or subrecipient's preceding fiscal year and includes the following (for more information see 17 CFR 229.402(c)(2)):
- i. Salary and bonus.
  - ii. Awards of stock, stock options, and stock appreciation rights. Use the dollar amount recognized for financial statement reporting purposes with respect to the fiscal year in accordance with the Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (Revised 2004) (FAS 123R), Shared Based Payments.
  - iii. Earnings for services under non-equity incentive plans. This does not include group life, health, hospitalization or medical reimbursement plans that do not discriminate in favor of executives, and are available generally to all salaried employees.
  - iv. Change in pension value. This is the change in present value of defined benefit and actuarial pension plans.

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

- v. Above-market earnings on deferred compensation which is not tax-qualified.
- vi. Other compensation, if the aggregate value of all such other compensation (e.g. severance, termination payments, value of life insurance paid on behalf of the employee, perquisites or property) for the executive exceeds \$10,000.

### E. Post Award Action Requests for Non-Construction Awards

All Post Award Action requests must be completed in Grants Online. NOAA Grants Online provides the ability for Recipients to submit the different Award Action Requests. Each request is described below with specific guidance.

#### General Guidance and NOAA Business Rules

- NOAA requires all Award Action Requests to be approved by a “Recipient Authorized Representative.” Grants Online enforces this business rule by routing all requests through the Recipient Authorized Representative(s) for submission to NOAA.
- An Award End Date may ONLY be extended through:
  - A funded amendment through an application (SF-424)
  - A No-Cost Extension - Prior Approval Waived (Research Terms and Conditions)
  - A No-Cost Extension - Prior Approval Required
- The Extension to Closeout is the only Award Action Request that may be initiated after the Award End Date.
  - An Extension to Closeout may only be requested within the 90-day closeout period (90 days after the award end date). The closeout period can be extended only once for a maximum of 60 days. .
- A No-Cost Extension - Prior Approval Waived (Research Terms and Conditions) must be submitted to NOAA 10 or more days prior to the award end date.
  - Grants Online automatically enforces this business rule.
- A No-Cost Extension - Prior Approval Required is required to be submitted to NOAA 30 or more days prior to the award end date.
  - Recipients that are allowed Prior Approval Waived (Research Terms and Conditions) must exercise this no-cost extension, before requesting a no-cost extension Prior Approval Required. .
  - Grants Online does not enforce this business rule. Enforcement is at the discretion of the Grants Officer.
- The "Other" Award Action Request may or may not produce an amendment. Use this Award Action Request if you have a request that does not fit under any other category. Please work

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

with your Federal Program Officer to determine if you should submit the "Other" Award Action Request. In a few cases, the recipient will not have to submit an "Other" Award Action Request. An email request from the recipient to the Federal Program Officer, and the approval of the content of that email by the Program Officer, who in turn, submits it to the Grants Officer is sufficient. The approval of the request ultimately lies with the Grants Officer. This email request and attendant correspondence is always attached to the Grants File as evidence of the transaction.

**Grants Online Processing Guidance** for list of Award Action Requests (Award Action Requests are listed on the following pages)

From the [Grants Online Recipient Quick Reference Guide](#) :

1. Click the "Award" tab.
2. Click the "Search" or the "Search Award" link. The "Search Award" page is displayed.
3. Click the "Search" button on the "Search Award" page. When your search results populate, click the award number for which you are submitting your AAR.
4. On the "Grants File" launch page, select the "Create Award Action Request" action from the action dropdown menu then click the "Submit" button.
5. The "Award Action Request Index" page is displayed with the available AARs. Click the link to the AAR that you wish to submit. The requested page will be displayed for you to complete. Enter the required fields and click the "Save" button.
6. The AAR page is re-displayed with the attachment link and other fields. You can upload documents. After completing the required information, click the "Save and Return to Main" button. Another message will display where you can confirm your request and start workflow, click the "Yes" button.
7. A review task is sent to your "Task" inbox for this request. Follow the steps listed under the Processing a Task in [this document](#). The review task will go first to the creator of the document and then to the Recipient Authorized Representative(s) in the organization. If you have the role of "Recipient Authorized Representative" you will have to submit the request to NOAA, thus you will have processed two tasks.

<b>List of Award Action Requests</b> Listed below is each kind of Award Action Request in the same relative location as it is found on the Award Action Request selection page in Grants Online. Those marked with an asterisk always require an amendment. The others generally do not, but might if any Special Award Conditions are associated with the request approval. * No Cost Extension – Prior Approval Required	No Cost Extension - Prior Approval Waived (Research Terms and Conditions)
Extension to Close Out	Reprogram or Rebudget
* Change in Scope	Equipment Purchase
* Transfer of Award	Foreign Travel
Change in Principal Investigator	Sole Source Contract
Organization Profile Change Request	Other
Change in Key Person Specified in the Application	Absence of more than 3 months or 25% by project director or PI
Satisfied Special Award Conditions	Inclusion of cost that require prior approval based

## NOAA Administrative Standard Award Conditions

	on cost principles
Transfer of funds allotted for training to other categories of expenses	* Sub award, transfer or contracting out of any work under the award if not described in the approved application
Pre-Award Cost	*Termination for Convenience
ASAP Drawdown Request for Broadband Technology Opportunities Program (BTOP) Only	

# Special Award Conditions

**Award Number:** NA14NMF4380304

**Amendment Number:** 0

## 1) Eligible Activities for Sub-recipients/Contracts

All work must adhere to the eligible activities as detailed in the data definitions for the PCSRF Project and Performance Metrics Database, found at

<https://www.webapps.nwfsc.noaa.gov/j/Docs/PCSRF%20Data%20Dictionary%20ver%202004-08-13.xlsx>. All subawards/contracts must comply with all applicable OMB Circulars (or Uniform Guidance), Federal regulations and guidance, and terms of this award. In the event of any audit discrepancy, costs associated with such discrepancy shall be considered unallowable unless resolved. In the event an audit determines a disallowance of cost, such amount shall also be considered unallowable.

## 2) Matching Requirement 2

Since this award requires the Recipient to provide \$1,333,333 in project-related costs from non-federal sources, the Recipient must maintain in its official accounting records an accounting of \$5,333,333.

## 3) New Award SAC

Award number NA14NMF4380304 to the Office of Species Conservation supports the work described in the Recipient's proposal entitled "Idaho Salmon Recovery 2014" dated 03/21/2014, revised on 07/11/2014, 07/25/2014, and 07/28/14, which is incorporated into the award by reference. Where the terms of the award and proposal differ, the terms of the award shall prevail.

## 4) Match Requirement

States are required to match or document in-kind contributions of at least thirty-three percent of the PCSRF grant funds. Matching funds must consist of 1) PCSRF projects funded totally or partially by state appropriated funds; 2) PCSRF projects that are funded totally or partially by sub-recipient or contractor funds; or, 3) PCSRF projects funded partially by other pre-approved sources of federal funding. Use of in-kind contributions as match must be approved, in advance, by the PCSRF Program Administrator in the NMFS Northwest Regional Office. In-kind contributions must be applied directly to a PCSRF project in order to be considered match.

## 5) Limit on Program Administration Costs

The States and Tribal Commissions/Consortiums must not expend more than three percent of the direct federal funds for administrative expenses (reported as Program Administration in the PCSRF database). Administrative expenses are defined as all costs, including direct and indirect costs, incurred by the State or Tribal Commission/Consortium in administering this grant and managing the distribution of the PCSRF grant funds to sub-recipients, contractors, programs, or projects that undertake PCSRF activities. Administrative expenses include activities such as sub-agreement and

contracts management and monitoring including site visits, accounting, program oversight, program support and overhead costs, and competitive funding allocation processes including the processing and administrative review of project applications and proposals. However, for the purposes of this grant, State or Tribal Commission/Consortium expenses for PCSRF data management and reporting, and the entry of project information into the PCSRF web-based project tracking data management database system (found at <https://www.webapps.nwfsc.noaa.gov/apex/f?p=227:1>), will not be considered within the administrative expenses when it is reported as developing or maintaining restoration data systems under Category B in the PCSRF database.

The three percent administrative cost limitation applies to the total federal direct costs at the end of the grant award. However, since the majority of the grants administration costs may occur prior to total disbursement of grant funds, the State or Tribal Commission/Consortium may draw down the three percent PCSRF administrative funds as needed anytime during the grant award period

#### **6) PCSRF Database System Progress Report Requirement**

Project data must be entered into the PCSRF database within 30 days of project selection and the required data fields must be completed. Project data is to be updated in the database as project status changes or 30 days prior to submitting semiannual performance reports. Semi-annual progress reports are to be generated by and downloaded from the PCSRF database and then completed for submission by completing the narrative section and uploading the report into Grants Online. All required data fields in the PCSRF database must be completed and reporting deficiencies must be rectified within 30 days of notice. The PCSRF database is accessible at <https://www.webapps.nwfsc.noaa.gov/apex/f?p=227:1>. Contact [nwfsc.sdm@noaa.gov](mailto:nwfsc.sdm@noaa.gov) or call 206-860-3433 for a username/password to have access to the PCSRF database.

#### **7) Performance Progress Reports**

Interim semi-annual Project Progress Reports (generated from the PCSRF database) are due no later than 30 days after the semi-annual reporting periods ending March 31 and September 30 for the entire project period of the award. A final Project Progress Report, also generated from the PCSRF database, is due within 90 days after award expiration. The report shall cover the last semi-annual reporting period ending on September 30 or March 31, or a portion thereof, based on the award expiration.

Project highlights with photographs are to be provided as part of the semi-annual progress reports for up to three completed projects every six months. Project highlights shall be submitted via e-mail to Scott Rumsey at [scott.rumsey@noaa.gov](mailto:scott.rumsey@noaa.gov).

**PART 24—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS TO STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS**

SOURCE: 53 FR 8048, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

EDITORIAL NOTE: For additional information, see related documents published at 49 FR 24958, June 18, 1984, 52 FR 20178, May 29, 1987, and 53 FR 8028, March 11, 1988.

**Subpart A—General**

**Subpart A—General**

- Sec.
- 24.1 Purpose and scope of this part.
- 24.2 Scope of subpart.
- 24.3 Definitions.
- 24.4 Applicability.
- 24.5 Effect on other issuances.
- 24.6 Additions and exceptions.

**§ 24.1 Purpose and scope of this part.**

This part establishes uniform administrative rules for Federal grants and cooperative agreements and subawards to State, local and Indian tribal governments.

**Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements**

**§ 24.2 Scope of subpart.**

This subpart contains general rules pertaining to this part and procedures for control of exceptions from this part.

- 24.10 Forms for applying for grants.
- 24.11 State plans.
- 24.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" grantees.

**Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements**

**§ 24.3 Definitions.**

As used in this part:  
*Accrued expenditures* mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for: (1) Goods and other tangible property received; (2) services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and (3) other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

- FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION
- 24.20 Standards for financial management systems.
  - 24.21 Payment.
  - 24.22 Allowable costs.
  - 24.23 Period of availability of funds.
  - 24.24 Matching or cost sharing.
  - 24.25 Program income.
  - 24.26 Non-Federal audit.

- CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS
- 24.30 Changes.
  - 24.31 Real property.
  - 24.32 Equipment.
  - 24.33 Supplies.
  - 24.34 Other property.
  - 24.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
  - 24.36 Procurement.
  - 24.37 Subgrants.

- REPORTS, RECORDS, RETENTION, AND ENFORCEMENT
- 24.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
  - 24.41 Financial reporting.
  - 24.42 Retention and access requirements for records.
  - 24.43 Enforcement.
  - 24.44 Termination for convenience.

*Accrued income* means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.

**Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements**

*Acquisition cost* of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee's regular accounting practices.

- 24.50 Closeout.
- 24.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.
- 24.52 Collection of amounts due.

**Subpart E—Entitlements [Reserved]**

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 301.

*Administrative requirements* mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from *programmatic* requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

*Awarding agency* means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

*Cash contributions* means the grantee's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

*Contract* means (except as used in the definitions for *grant* and *subgrant* in this section and except where qualified by *Federal*) a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

*Cost sharing or matching* means the value of the third party in-kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

*Cost-type contract* means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

*Equipment* means tangible, non-expendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of \$5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

*Expenditure report* means: (1) For non-construction grants, the SF-269 "Financial Status Report" (or other equivalent report); (2) for construction grants, the SF-271 "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement" (or other equivalent report).

*Federally recognized Indian tribal government* means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

*Government* means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

*Grant* means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

*Grantee* means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

*Local government* means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under State law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

*Obligations* means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

*OMB* means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

### § 24.3

### 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

*Outlays* (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

*Percentage of completion method* refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee's cost incurred.

*Prior approval* means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost.

*Real property* means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

*Share*, when referring to the awarding agency's portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency's portion of the acquiring party's total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition cost of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted—not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

*State* means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing

agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

*Subgrant* means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of *grant* in this part.

*Subgrantee* means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

*Supplies* means all tangible personal property other than *equipment* as defined in this part.

*Suspension* means depending on the context, either (1) temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or (2) an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with agency regulations implementing E.O. 12549 to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

*Termination* means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previously-awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. *Termination* does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) Withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) Refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

*Terms of a grant or subgrant* mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

## Office of the Secretary, Commerce

## § 24.4

*Third party in-kind contributions* mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

*Unliquidated obligations* for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

*Unobligated balance* means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

### § 24.4 Applicability.

(a) *General.* Subparts A through D of this part apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of § 24.6, or:

(1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under Title V, Subtitle D, Chapter 2, Section 583—the Secretary's discretionary grant program) and Titles I-III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (Section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and Part C of Title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (Title IV-A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)19(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this part);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (Title IV-D of the Act);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (Title IV-E of the Act);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (Titles I, X, XIV, and XVI-AABD of the Act); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (Title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).

(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) School Lunch (section 4 of the Act),

(ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act),

(iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act),

(iv) Summer Food Service for Children (section 13 of the Act), and

(v) Child Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act).

(5) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk (section 3 of the Act), and

(ii) School Breakfast (section 4 of the Act).

(6) Entitlement grants for State Administrative expenses under The Food Stamp Act of 1977 (section 16 of the Act).

(7) A grant for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a grant listed in paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(8) Grant funds awarded under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1522(e)) and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L.

## § 24.5

96-422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits;

(9) Grants to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 236 through 241-1(a), and 242 through 244 (portions of the Impact Aid program), except for 20 U.S.C. 238(d)(2)(c) and 240(f) (Entitlement Increase for Handicapped Children); and

(10) Payments under the Veterans Administration's State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 641(a)).

(b) *Entitlement programs.* Entitlement programs enumerated above in §24.4(a) (3) through (8) are subject to subpart E.

### § 24.5 Effect on other issuances.

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this part are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in §24.6.

### § 24.6 Additions and exceptions.

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this part, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.

(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

## Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

### § 24.10 Forms for applying for grants.

(a) *Scope.* (1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(b) *Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations.* (1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980. For any standard form, except the SF-424 facesheet, Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the applicant to disregard any line item that is not needed.

(4) When a grantee applies for additional funding (such as a continuation or supplemental award) or amends a previously submitted application, only the affected pages need be submitted. Previously submitted pages with information that is still current need not be resubmitted.

### § 24.11 State plans.

(a) *Scope.* The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive order.

(b) *Requirements.* A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan

that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) *Assurances.* In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:

(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions,

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) *Amendments.* A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect: (1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or (2) a material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

#### § 24.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for “high-risk” grantees.

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered “high risk” if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this part, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grantee or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;

(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions, and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.

### Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

#### FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION

#### § 24.20 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) A State must expand and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to—

(1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and

(2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) *Financial reporting.* Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) *Accounting records.* Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source

## § 24.21

and application of funds provided for financially-assisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) *Internal control.* Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) *Budget control.* Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the development of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) *Allowable cost.* Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) *Source documentation.* Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.

(7) *Cash management.* Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees' cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

### § 24.21 Payment.

(a) *Scope.* This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) *Basic standard.* Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR Part 205.

(c) *Advances.* Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) *Reimbursement.* Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency's payments to the grantee or subgrantee will be based on the grantee's or subgrantee's actual rate of disbursement.

(e) *Working capital advances.* If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance

basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee's actual cash disbursements.

(f) *Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) *Withholding payments.* (1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless—

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or

(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with § 24.43(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) *Cash depositories.* (1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) *Interest earned on advances.* Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 *et seq.*) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit interest earned on advances to the Federal agency. The grantee or subgrantee may keep interest amounts up to \$100 per year for administrative expenses.

#### § 24.22 Allowable costs.

(a) *Limitation on use of funds.* Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantees, subgrantees and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) *Applicable cost principles.* For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

For the costs of a—	Use the principles in—
State, local or Indian tribal government.	OMB Circular A-87.
Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular.	OMB Circular A-122.

**§ 24.23**

**15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)**

For the costs of a—	Use the principles in—
Educational institutions. .... For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular.	OMB Circular A-21. 48 CFR Part 31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.

**§ 24.23 Period of availability of funds.**

(a) *General.* Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) *Liquidation of obligations.* A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the annual Financial Status Report (SF-269). The Federal agency may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

**§ 24.24 Matching or cost sharing.**

(a) *Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable.* With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party in-kind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) *Qualifications and exceptions—(1) Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements.* Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) *General revenue sharing.* For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) *Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements.* Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) *Costs financed by program income.* Costs financed by program income, as defined in §24.25, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless they are expressly permitted in the terms of the assistance agreement. (This use of general program income is described in §24.25(g).)

(5) *Services or property financed by income earned by contractors.* Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) *Records.* Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) *Special standards for third party in-kind contributions.* (i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay

for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Costs sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party in-kind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this part. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(c) *Valuation of donated services*—(1) *Volunteer services*. Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee's or subgrantee's organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) *Employees of other organizations*. When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee's normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee's fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services

are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(d) *Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space*.

(1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) *Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land*. If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) *Awards for capital expenditures*. If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of donation may be counted as cost sharing or matching,

(2) *Other awards*. If assisting in the acquisition of property is not the purpose of the grant or subgrant, paragraphs (e)(2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply:

(i) If approval is obtained from the awarding agency, the market value at the time of donation of the donated equipment or buildings and the fair rental rate of the donated land may be counted as cost sharing or matching. In the case of a subgrant, the terms of the grant agreement may require that the approval be obtained from the Federal agency as well as the grantee. In all cases, the approval may be given only if a purchase of the equipment or rental of the land would be approved as an allowable direct cost. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost-sharing or matching.

(ii) If approval is not obtained under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, no amount may be counted for donated land, and only depreciation or use allowances may be counted for donated equipment and buildings. The depreciation or use allowances for this property are not treated as third party in-kind

## § 24.25

contributions. Instead, they are treated as costs incurred by the grantee or subgrantee. They are computed and allocated (usually as indirect costs) in accordance with the cost principles specified in § 24.22, in the same way as depreciation or use allowances for purchased equipment and buildings. The amount of depreciation or use allowances for donated equipment and buildings is based on the property's market value at the time it was donated.

(f) *Valuation of grantee or subgrantee donated real property for construction/acquisition.* If a grantee or subgrantee donates real property for a construction or facilities acquisition project, the current market value of that property may be counted as cost sharing or matching. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(g) *Appraisal of real property.* In some cases under paragraphs (d), (e) and (f) of this section, it will be necessary to establish the market value of land or a building or the fair rental rate of land or of space in a building. In these cases, the Federal agency may require the market value or fair rental value be set by an independent appraiser, and that the value or rate be certified by the grantee. This requirement will also be imposed by the grantee on subgrantees.

### § 24.25 Program income.

(a) *General.* Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) *Definition of program income.* Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

the grant agreement during the grant period. "During the grant period" is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) *Cost of generating program income.* If authorized by Federal regulations or the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) *Governmental revenues.* Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.

(e) *Royalties.* Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income. (See § 24.34.)

(f) *Property.* Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment will be handled in accordance with the requirements of §§ 24.31 and 24.32.

(g) *Use of program income.* Program income shall be deducted from outlays which may be both Federal and non-Federal as described below, unless the Federal agency regulations or the grant agreement specify another alternative (or a combination of the alternatives). In specifying alternatives, the Federal agency may distinguish between income earned by the grantee and income earned by subgrantees and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When Federal agencies authorize the alternatives in paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall also be deducted from outlays.

(1) *Deduction.* Ordinarily program income shall be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income shall be used for current costs unless the Federal agency authorizes otherwise. Program income which the grantee did not anticipate at the time of the award shall be used to reduce the Federal

agency and grantee contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) *Addition.* When authorized, program income may be added to the funds committed to the grant agreement by the Federal agency and the grantee. The program income shall be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the grant agreement.

(3) *Cost sharing or matching.* When authorized, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the grant agreement. The amount of the Federal grant award remains the same.

(h) *Income after the award period.* There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of program income earned after the end of the award period (i.e., until the ending date of the final financial report, see paragraph (a) of this section), unless the terms of the agreement or the Federal agency regulations provide otherwise.

#### § 24.26 Non-Federal audit.

(a) *Basic rule.* Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7507) and revised OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations." The audits shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial audits.

(b) *Subgrantees.* State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, that provide Federal awards to a subgrantee, which expends \$300,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards in a fiscal year, shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," have met the audit requirements of the Act. Commercial contractors (private for-profit and private and governmental organizations) providing

goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractor has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in accordance with the Act, Circular A-110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee's own records; and

(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) *Auditor selection.* In arranging for audit services, § 24.36 shall be followed.

[53 FR 8048, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 62 FR 45939, 45940, Aug. 29, 1997]

#### CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS

#### § 24.30 Changes.

(a) *General.* Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.

(b) *Relation to cost principles.* The applicable cost principles (see § 24.22) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) *Budget changes—(1) Nonconstruction projects.* Except as stated in other regulations or an award document,

## § 24.31

grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a non-construction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency's share exceeds \$100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) *Construction projects.* Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) *Combined construction and non-construction projects.* When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from non-construction to construction or vice versa.

(d) *Programmatic changes.* Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval re-

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

quirement is in addition to the approval requirements of § 24.36 but does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(e) *Additional prior approval requirements.* The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) *Requesting prior approval.* (1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget format the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see § 24.22) may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing. A grantee will not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the Federal grant to the grantee. If the revision, requested by the subgrantee would result in a change to the grantee's approved project which requires Federal prior approval, the grantee will obtain the Federal agency's approval before approving the subgrantee's request.

### § 24.31 Real property.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Use.* Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(1) The Federal awarding agency may require the placing of appropriate notices of record to advise that property has been acquired or improved with Federal financial assistance, and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property.

(2) [Reserved]

(c) *Disposition*. When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) *Retention of title*. Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

(2) *Sale of property*. Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) *Transfer of title*. Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

[53 FR 8048, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8049, Mar. 11, 1988]

#### § 24.32 Equipment.

(a) *Title*. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acqui-

sition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *States*. A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) *Use*. (1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in § 24.25(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant funds to provide services for a fee to compete unfairly with private companies that provide equivalent services, unless specifically permitted or contemplated by Federal statute.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the grantee or subgrantee may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property, subject to the approval of the awarding agency.

(d) *Management requirements*. Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part with grant funds, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of

### § 24.33

property, who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft shall be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the grantee or subgrantee is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) *Disposition.* When original or replacement equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency, disposition of the equipment will be made as follows:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than \$5,000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency.

(2) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value in excess of \$5,000 may be retained or sold and the awarding agency shall have a right to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the awarding agency's share of the equipment.

(3) In cases where a grantee or subgrantee fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the awarding agency may direct the grantee or subgrantee to take excess and disposition actions.

(f) *Federal equipment.* In the event a grantee or subgrantee is provided federally-owned equipment:

(1) Title will remain vested in the Federal Government.

(2) Grantees or subgrantees will manage the equipment in accordance with Federal agency rules and procedures,

### 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

and submit an annual inventory listing.

(3) When the equipment is no longer needed, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the Federal agency.

(g) *Right to transfer title.* The Federal awarding agency may reserve the right to transfer title to the Federal Government or a third part named by the awarding agency when such a third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfers shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instruction within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow §24.32(e).

(3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

### § 24.33 Supplies.

(a) *Title.* Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Disposition.* If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding \$5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

### § 24.34 Other property.

(a) *Copyrights.* The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, non-exclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

(1) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and

(2) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee, or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

(b) *Intangible property.* Title to such property as loans, notes, and other debt instruments (whether considered tangible or intangible) acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively. Such property will be used for the originally authorized purpose as long as needed for that purpose, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of such property will be made as provided in § 24.32(e).

[53 FR 8049, Mar. 11, 1988]

#### § 24.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, "Debarment and Suspension."

#### § 24.36 Procurement.

(a) *States.* When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.

(b) *Procurement standards.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms,

conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

- (i) The employee, officer or agent,
- (ii) Any member of his immediate family,
- (iii) His or her partner, or
- (iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements

## § 24.36

for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee un-

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

less the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Competition.* (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of § 24.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,

(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,

(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,

(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,

(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,

(vi) Specifying only a "brand name" product instead of allowing "an equal" product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except

in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a "brand name or equal" description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) *Methods of procurement to be followed.* (1) Procurement by *small purchase procedures*. Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for se-

curing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at \$100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by *sealed bids* (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in §24.36(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such

## § 24.36

discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by *competitive proposals*. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by *noncompetitive proposals* is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) *Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.* (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.

(f) *Contract cost and price.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price reasonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see §24.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) *Awarding agency review.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must make avail-

able, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system

## § 24.36

to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) *Bonding requirements.* For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) *A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price.* The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) *A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) *A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must con-

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

tain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of \$10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of \$10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a-7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of \$2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

(6) Compliance with Sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327-330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of \$2000, and in excess of \$2500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining

to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of \$100,000).

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94-163, 89 Stat. 871).

[53 FR 8048, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 19639, 19642, Apr. 19, 1995]

#### § 24.37 Subgrants.

(a) *States.* States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with § 24.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) *All other grantees.* All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) *Exceptions.* By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 24.10;

(2) Section 24.11;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR Part 205, cited in § 24.21; and

(4) Section 24.50.

#### REPORTS, RECORDS, RETENTION, AND ENFORCEMENT

#### § 24.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) *Monitoring by grantees.* Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) *Nonconstruction performance reports.* The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance

## § 24.41

report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) *Construction performance reports.* For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(d) *Significant developments.* Events may occur between the scheduled per-

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

formance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) *Waivers, extensions.* (1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

### § 24.41 Financial reporting.

(a) *General.* (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in

paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this part.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expedite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) *Financial Status Report*—(1) *Form*. Grantees will use Standard Form 269 or 269A, Financial Status Report, to report the status of funds for all non-construction grants and for construction grants when required in accordance with § 24.41(e)(2)(iii) of this section.

(2) *Accounting basis*. Each grantee will report program outlays and program income on a cash or accrual basis as prescribed by the awarding agency. If the Federal agency requires accrual information and the grantee's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through and analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) *Frequency*. The Federal agency may prescribe the frequency of the report for each project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly. If the Federal agency does not specify the frequency of the report, it will be submitted annually. A final report will be required upon expiration or termination of grant support.

(4) *Due date*. When reports are required on a quarterly or semiannual basis, they will be due 30 days after the

reporting period. When required on an annual basis, they will be due 90 days after the grant year. Final reports will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) *Federal Cash Transactions Report*—(1) *Form*. (i) For grants paid by letter or credit, Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the Standard Form 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report, and when necessary, its continuation sheet, Standard Form 272a, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement.

(ii) These reports will be used by the Federal agency to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or outlay information for each grant from grantees. The format of the report may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance.

(2) *Forecasts of Federal cash requirements*. Forecasts of Federal cash requirements may be required in the "Remarks" section of the report.

(3) *Cash in hands of subgrantees*. When considered necessary and feasible by the Federal agency, grantees may be required to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days' needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

(4) *Frequency and due date*. Grantees must submit the report no later than 15 working days following the end of each quarter. However, where an advance either by letter of credit or electronic transfer of funds is authorized at an annualized rate of one million dollars or more, the Federal agency may require the report to be submitted within 15 working days following the end of each month.

(d) *Request for advance or reimbursement*—(1) *Advance payments*. Requests for Treasury check advance payments will be submitted on Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. (This form will not be used for drawdowns under a letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or when

## § 24.42

Treasury check advance payments are made to the grantee automatically on a predetermined basis.)

(2) *Reimbursements.* Requests for reimbursement under nonconstruction grants will also be submitted on Standard Form 270. (For reimbursement requests under construction grants, see paragraph (e)(1) of this section.)

(3) The frequency for submitting payment requests is treated in § 24.41(b)(3).

(e) *Outlay report and request for reimbursement for construction programs.* (1) Grants that support construction activities paid by reimbursement method.

(i) Requests for reimbursement under construction grants will be submitted on Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Federal agencies may, however, prescribe the Request for Advance or Reimbursement form, specified in § 24.41(d), instead of this form.

(ii) The frequency for submitting reimbursement requests is treated in § 24.41(b)(3).

(2) Grants that support construction activities paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advance.

(i) When a construction grant is paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advances, the grantee will report its outlays to the Federal agency using Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. The Federal agency will provide any necessary special instruction. However, frequency and due date shall be governed by § 24.41(b) (3) and (4).

(ii) When a construction grant is paid by Treasury check advances based on periodic requests from the grantee, the advances will be requested on the form specified in § 24.41(d).

(iii) The Federal agency may substitute the Financial Status Report specified in § 24.41(b) for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.

(3) *Accounting basis.* The accounting basis for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs shall be governed by § 24.41(b)(2).

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1-1-02 Edition)

### § 24.42 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) *Applicability.* (1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

(i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this part, program regulations or the grant agreement, or

(ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see § 24.36(i)(10).

(b) *Length of retention period.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Starting date of retention period—*(1) *General.* When grant support is continued or renewed at annual or other intervals, the retention period for the records of each funding period starts on the day the grantee or subgrantee submits to the awarding agency its single or last expenditure report for that period. However, if grant support is continued or renewed quarterly, the retention period for each year's records starts on the day the grantee submits

its expenditure report for the last quarter of the Federal fiscal year. In all other cases, the retention period starts on the day the grantee submits its final expenditure report. If an expenditure report has been waived, the retention period starts on the day the report would have been due.

(2) *Real property and equipment records.* The retention period for real property and equipment records starts from the date of the disposition or replacement or transfer at the direction of the awarding agency.

(3) *Records for income transactions after grant or subgrant support.* In some cases grantees must report income after the period of grant support. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the income starts from the end of the grantee's fiscal year in which the income is earned.

(4) *Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, etc.* This paragraph applies to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(i) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(ii) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(d) *Substitution of microfilm.* Copies made by microfilming, photocopying, or similar methods may be substituted for the original records.

(e) *Access to records—(1) Records of grantees and subgrantees.* The awarding

agency and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives, shall have the right of access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records of grantees and subgrantees which are pertinent to the grant, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts.

(2) *Expiration of right of access.* The rights of access in this section must not be limited to the required retention period but shall last as long as the records are retained.

(f) *Restrictions on public access.* The Federal Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) does not apply to records unless required by Federal, State, or local law, grantees and subgrantees are not required to permit public access to their records.

#### § 24.43 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency.

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee's or subgrantee's program.

(4) Withhold further awards for the program, or

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) *Hearings, appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

## § 24.44

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude grantee or subgrantee from being subject to “Debarment and Suspension” under E.O. 12549 (see § 24.35).

## § 24.44 Termination for convenience.

Except as provided in § 24.43 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either § 24.43 or paragraph (a) of this section.

## 15 CFR Subtitle A (1–1–02 Edition)

### Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements

#### § 24.50 Closeout.

(a) *General.* The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) *Reports.* Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) *Final performance or progress report.*

(2) *Financial Status Report (SF 269) or Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs (SF-271) (as applicable).*

(3) *Final request for payment (SF-270) (if applicable).*

(4) *Invention disclosure (if applicable).*

(5) *Federally-owned property report:*

In accordance with § 24.32(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal agency of property no longer needed.

(c) *Cost adjustment.* The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) *Cash adjustments.* (1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash advanced that is not authorized to be retained for use on other grants.

#### § 24.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.

The closeout of a grant does not affect:

(a) The Federal agency’s right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;

## Office of the Secretary, Commerce

## § 25.1

(b) The grantee's obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;

(c) Records retention as required in § 24.42;

(d) Property management requirements in §§ 24.31 and 24.32; and

(e) Audit requirements in § 24.26.

### § 24.52 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements,

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or

(3) Other action permitted by law.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Chapter II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

## Subpart E—Entitlements [Reserved]

### PART 25—PROGRAM

#### FRAUD CIVIL REMEDIES

Sec.

- 25.1 Basis and purpose.
- 25.2 Definitions.
- 25.3 Basis for civil penalties and assessments.
- 25.4 Investigation.
- 25.5 Review by the reviewing official.
- 25.6 Prerequisites for issuing a complaint.
- 25.7 Complaint.
- 25.8 Service of complaint.
- 25.9 Answer.
- 25.10 Default upon failure to file an answer.
- 25.11 Referral of complaint and answer to the ALJ.
- 25.12 Notice of hearing.
- 25.13 Parties to the hearing.
- 25.14 Separation of functions.
- 25.15 Ex parte contacts.
- 25.16 Disqualification of reviewing official or ALJ.

- 25.17 Rights of parties.
- 25.18 Authority of the ALJ.
- 25.19 Prehearing conferences.
- 25.20 Disclosure of documents.
- 25.21 Discovery.
- 25.22 Exchange of witness lists, statements, and exhibits.
- 25.23 Subpoena for attendance at hearing.
- 25.24 Protective order.
- 25.25 Fees.
- 25.26 Form, filing and service of papers.
- 25.27 Computation of time.
- 25.28 Motions.
- 25.29 Sanctions.
- 25.30 The hearing and burden of proof.
- 25.31 Determining the amount of penalties and assessments.
- 25.32 Location of hearing.
- 25.33 Witnesses.
- 25.34 Evidence.
- 25.35 The record.
- 25.36 Post-hearing briefs.
- 25.37 Initial decision.
- 25.38 Reconsideration of initial decision.
- 25.39 Appeal to authority head.
- 25.40 Stays ordered by the Department of Justice.
- 25.41 Stay pending appeal.
- 25.42 Judicial review.
- 25.43 Collection of civil penalties and assessments.
- 25.44 Right to administrative offset.
- 25.45 Deposit in Treasury of United States.
- 25.46 Compromise or settlement.
- 25.47 Limitations.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 6101–6104, Pub. L. 99–509, 100 Stat. 1874 (31 U.S.C. 3801–3812); Sec. 4, as amended, and sec. 5, Pub. L. 101–410, 104 Stat. 890 (28 U.S.C. 2461 note); Pub. L. 104–134, 110 Stat. 1321, 28 U.S.C. 2461 note.

SOURCE: 55 FR 47854, Nov. 16, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

#### FRAUD CIVIL REMEDIES

### § 25.1 Basis and purpose.

(a) *Basis.* This part implements the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, Public Law 99–509, section 6101–6104, 100 Stat. 1874 (October 21, 1986), to be codified at 31 U.S.C. 3801–3812. 31 U.S.C. 3809 of the statute requires each authority head to promulgate regulations necessary to implement the provisions of the statute.

(b) *Purpose.* This part (1) establishes administrative procedures for imposing civil penalties and assessments against persons who make, submit, or present, or cause to be made, submitted, or presented, false, fictitious, or fraudulent claims or written statements to authorities or to their agents, and (2)

**OMB CIRCULAR A-87 (REVISED 05/10/04)**

CIRCULAR NO. A-87

Revised

TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS

SUBJECT: Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments

1. Purpose. This Circular establishes principles and standards for determining costs for Federal awards carried out through grants, cost reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with State and local governments and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments (governmental units).
2. Authority. This Circular is issued under the authority of the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended; the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950, as amended; the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; and Executive Order No. 11541 ("Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President").
3. Background. As part of the governmentwide grant streamlining effort under P.L. 106-107, *Federal Financial Award Management Improvement Act of 1999*, OMB led an interagency workgroup to simplify and make consistent, to the extent feasible, the various rules used to award Federal grants. An interagency task force was established in 2001 to review existing cost principles for Federal awards to State, local, and Indian tribal governments; Colleges and Universities; and Non-Profit organizations. The task force studied Selected Items of Cost in each of the three cost principles to determine which items of costs could be stated consistently and/or more clearly. A proposed revised Circular reflecting the results of those efforts was issued on August 12, 2002 at 67 FR 52558. Extensive comments on the proposed revisions, discussions with interest groups, and related developments were considered in developing this revision.
4. Rescissions. This Circular rescinds and supersedes Circular A-87, as amended, issued May 4, 1995.
5. Policy. This Circular establishes principles and standards to provide a uniform approach for determining costs and to promote effective program delivery, efficiency, and better relationships between governmental units and the Federal Government. The principles are for determining allowable costs only. They are not intended to identify the circumstances or to dictate the extent of Federal and governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular Federal award. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this Circular.
6. Definitions. Definitions of key terms used in this Circular are contained in Attachment A, Section B.
7. Required Action. Agencies responsible for administering programs that involve cost

reimbursement contracts, grants, and other agreements with governmental units shall issue regulations to implement the provisions of this Circular and its Attachments.

8. OMB Responsibilities. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will review agency regulations and implementation of this Circular, and will provide policy interpretations and assistance to insure effective and efficient implementation. Any exceptions will be subject to approval by OMB. Exceptions will only be made in particular cases where adequate justification is presented.

9. Information Contact. Further information concerning this Circular may be obtained by contacting the Office of Federal Financial Management, Financial Standards and Reporting Branch, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, telephone 202-395-3993.

10. Policy Review Date. OMB Circular A-87 will have a policy review three years from the date of issuance.

11. Effective Date. This Circular is effective as follows:

- Except as otherwise provided herein, these rules are effective June 9, 2004.

---

OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-87

COST PRINCIPLES FOR STATE, LOCAL AND INDIAN TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Attachment A - General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs

Attachment B - Selected Items of Cost

Attachment C - State/Local-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

Attachment D - Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

Attachment E - State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

---

ATTACHMENT A

Circular No. A-87

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR DETERMINING ALLOWABLE COSTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. Purpose and Scope

1. Objectives

2. Policy guides

3. Application

B. Definitions

1. Approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency

2. Award

3. Awarding agency

4. Central service cost allocation plan

5. Claim

6. Cognizant agency

7. Common rule

8. Contract

9. Cost

10. Cost allocation plan

11. Cost objective

12. Federally-recognized Indian tribal government

13. Governmental unit

14. Grantee department or agency

15. Indirect cost rate proposal

16. Local government

17. Public assistance cost allocation plan

18. State

C. Basic Guidelines

1. Factors affecting allowability of costs

2. Reasonable costs

3. Allocable costs

4. Applicable credits

#### D. Composition of Cost

1. Total cost

2. Classification of costs

#### E. Direct Costs

1. General

2. Application

3. Minor items

#### F. Indirect Costs

1. General

2. Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals

3. Limitation on indirect or administrative costs

#### G. Interagency Services

#### H. Required Certifications

#### A. Purpose and Scope

1. Objectives. This Attachment establishes principles for determining the allowable costs incurred by State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments (governmental units) under grants, cost reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with the Federal Government (collectively referred to in this Circular as "Federal awards"). The principles are for the purpose of cost determination and are not intended to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of Federal or governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular program or project. The principles are designed to provide that Federal awards bear their fair share of cost recognized under these principles except where restricted or prohibited by law. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this Circular.

2. Policy guides.

a. The application of these principles is based on the fundamental premises that:

(1) Governmental units are responsible for the efficient and effective administration of Federal awards through the application of sound management practices.

(2) Governmental units assume responsibility for administering Federal funds in a manner consistent with underlying agreements, program objectives, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Each governmental unit, in recognition of its own unique combination of staff, facilities, and experience, will have the primary responsibility for employing whatever form of organization and management techniques may be necessary to assure proper and efficient administration of Federal awards.

b. Federal agencies should work with States or localities which wish to test alternative mechanisms for paying costs for administering Federal programs. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) encourages Federal agencies to test fee-for-service alternatives as a replacement for current cost-reimbursement payment methods in response to the National Performance Review's (NPR) recommendation. The NPR recommended the fee-for-service approach to reduce the burden associated with maintaining systems for charging administrative costs to Federal programs and preparing and approving cost allocation plans. This approach should also increase incentives for administrative efficiencies and improve outcomes.

### 3. Application.

a. These principles will be applied by all Federal agencies in determining costs incurred by governmental units under Federal awards (including subawards) except those with (1) publicly-financed educational institutions subject to OMB Circular A-21, "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions," and (2) programs administered by publicly-owned hospitals and other providers of medical care that are subject to requirements promulgated by the sponsoring Federal agencies. However, this Circular does apply to all central service and department/agency costs that are allocated or billed to those educational institutions, hospitals, and other providers of medical care or services by other State and local government departments and agencies.

b. All subawards are subject to those Federal cost principles applicable to the particular organization concerned. Thus, if a subaward is to a governmental unit (other than a college, university or hospital), this Circular shall apply; if a subaward is to a commercial organization, the cost principles applicable to commercial organizations shall apply; if a subaward is to a college or university, Circular A-21 shall apply; if a subaward is to a hospital, the cost principles used by the Federal awarding agency for awards to hospitals shall apply, subject to the provisions of subsection A.3.a. of this Attachment; if a subaward is to some other non-profit organization, Circular A-122, "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations," shall apply.

c. These principles shall be used as a guide in the pricing of fixed price arrangements where costs are used in determining the appropriate price.

d. Where a Federal contract awarded to a governmental unit incorporates a Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) clause, the requirements of that clause shall apply. In such cases, the

governmental unit and the cognizant Federal agency shall establish an appropriate advance agreement on how the governmental unit will comply with applicable CAS requirements when estimating, accumulating and reporting costs under CAS-covered contracts. The agreement shall indicate that OMB Circular A-87 requirements will be applied to other Federal awards. In all cases, only one set of records needs to be maintained by the governmental unit.

e. Conditional exemptions.

(1) OMB authorizes conditional exemption from OMB administrative requirements and cost principles circulars for certain Federal programs with statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding, that are identified by a Federal agency and approved by the head of the Executive department or establishment. A Federal agency shall consult with OMB during its consideration of whether to grant such an exemption.

(2) To promote efficiency in State and local program administration, when Federal non-entitlement programs with common purposes have specific statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding and where most of the State agency's resources come from non-Federal sources, Federal agencies may exempt these covered State-administered, non-entitlement grant programs from certain OMB grants management requirements. The exemptions would be from all but the allocability of costs provisions of OMB Circulars A-87 (Attachment A, subsection C.3), "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments," A-21 (Section C, subpart 4), "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions," and A-122 (Attachment A, subsection A.4), "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations," and from all of the administrative requirements provisions of OMB Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," and the agencies' grants management common rule.

(3) When a Federal agency provides this flexibility, as a prerequisite to a State's exercising this option, a State must adopt its own written fiscal and administrative requirements for expending and accounting for all funds, which are consistent with the provisions of OMB Circular A-87, and extend such policies to all subrecipients. These fiscal and administrative requirements must be sufficiently specific to ensure that: funds are used in compliance with all applicable Federal statutory and regulatory provisions, costs are reasonable and necessary for operating these programs, and funds are not be used for general expenses required to carry out other responsibilities of a State or its subrecipients.

**B. Definitions**

1. "Approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency" means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring a specific cost. If such costs are specifically identified in a Federal award document, approval of the document constitutes approval of the costs. If the costs are covered by a State/local-wide cost allocation plan or an indirect cost proposal, approval of the plan constitutes the approval.

2. "Award" means grants, cost reimbursement contracts and other agreements between a State,

local and Indian tribal government and the Federal Government.

3. "Awarding agency" means (a) with respect to a grant, cooperative agreement, or cost reimbursement contract, the Federal agency, and (b) with respect to a subaward, the party that awarded the subaward.

4. "Central service cost allocation plan" means the documentation identifying, accumulating, and allocating or developing billing rates based on the allowable costs of services provided by a governmental unit on a centralized basis to its departments and agencies. The costs of these services may be allocated or billed to users.

5. "Claim" means a written demand or written assertion by the governmental unit or grantor seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of award terms, or other relief arising under or relating to the award. A voucher, invoice or other routine request for payment that is not a dispute when submitted is not a claim. Appeals, such as those filed by a governmental unit in response to questioned audit costs, are not considered claims until a final management decision is made by the Federal awarding agency.

6. "Cognizant agency" means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing, negotiating, and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals developed under this Circular on behalf of all Federal agencies. OMB publishes a listing of cognizant agencies.

7. "Common Rule" means the "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments; Final Rule" originally issued at 53 FR 8034-8103 (March 11, 1988). Other common rules will be referred to by their specific titles.

8. "Contract" means a mutually binding legal relationship obligating the seller to furnish the supplies or services (including construction) and the buyer to pay for them. It includes all types of commitments that obligate the government to an expenditure of appropriated funds and that, except as otherwise authorized, are in writing. In addition to bilateral instruments, contracts include (but are not limited to): awards and notices of awards; job orders or task orders issued under basic ordering agreements; letter contracts; orders, such as purchase orders, under which the contract becomes effective by written acceptance or performance; and, bilateral contract modifications. Contracts do not include grants and cooperative agreements covered by 31 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.

9. "Cost" means an amount as determined on a cash, accrual, or other basis acceptable to the Federal awarding or cognizant agency. It does not include transfers to a general or similar fund.

10. "Cost allocation plan" means central service cost allocation plan, public assistance cost allocation plan, and indirect cost rate proposal. Each of these terms are further defined in this section.

11. "Cost objective" means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, grant, or other activity for which cost data are needed and for which costs are incurred.

12. "Federally recognized Indian tribal government" means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any native village as defined in Section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat. 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

13. "Governmental unit" means the entire State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government, including any component thereof. Components of governmental units may function independently of the governmental unit in accordance with the term of the award.

14. "Grantee department or agency" means the component of a State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government which is responsible for the performance or administration of all or some part of a Federal award.

15. "Indirect cost rate proposal" means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or component thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate as described in Attachment E of this Circular.

16. "Local government" means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority, school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a non-profit corporation under State law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

17. "Public assistance cost allocation plan" means a narrative description of the procedures that will be used in identifying, measuring and allocating all administrative costs to all of the programs administered or supervised by State public assistance agencies as described in Attachment D of this Circular.

18. "State" means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments.

### C. Basic Guidelines

1. Factors affecting allowability of costs. To be allowable under Federal awards, costs must meet the following general criteria:

a. Be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient performance and administration of Federal awards.

b. Be allocable to Federal awards under the provisions of this Circular.

c. Be authorized or not prohibited under State or local laws or regulations.

d. Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles, Federal laws, terms and conditions of the Federal award, or other governing regulations as to types or amounts of cost items.

e. Be consistent with policies, regulations, and procedures that apply uniformly to both Federal awards and other activities of the governmental unit.

f. Be accorded consistent treatment. A cost may not be assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost.

g. Except as otherwise provided for in this Circular, be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

h. Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other Federal award in either the current or a prior period, except as specifically provided by Federal law or regulation.

i. Be the net of all applicable credits.

j. Be adequately documented.

2. Reasonable costs. A cost is reasonable if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the cost. The question of reasonableness is particularly important when governmental units or components are predominately federally- funded. In determining reasonableness of a given cost, consideration shall be given to:

a. Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the governmental unit or the performance of the Federal award.

b. The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as: sound business practices; arms length bargaining; Federal, State and other laws and regulations; and, terms and conditions of the Federal award.

c. Market prices for comparable goods or services.

d. Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances considering their responsibilities to the governmental unit, its employees, the public at large, and the Federal Government.

e. Significant deviations from the established practices of the governmental unit which may unjustifiably increase the Federal award's cost.

3. Allocable costs.

a. A cost is allocable to a particular cost objective if the goods or services involved are chargeable or assignable to such cost objective in accordance with relative benefits received.

b. All activities which benefit from the governmental unit's indirect cost, including unallowable activities and services donated to the governmental unit by third parties, will receive an

appropriate allocation of indirect costs.

c. Any cost allocable to a particular Federal award or cost objective under the principles provided for in this Circular may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies, to avoid restrictions imposed by law or terms of the Federal awards, or for other reasons.

d. Where an accumulation of indirect costs will ultimately result in charges to a Federal award, a cost allocation plan will be required as described in Attachments C, D, and E.

#### 4. Applicable credits.

a. Applicable credits refer to those receipts or reduction of expenditure-type transactions that offset or reduce expense items allocable to Federal awards as direct or indirect costs. Examples of such transactions are: purchase discounts, rebates or allowances, recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds or rebates, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing to or received by the governmental unit relate to allowable costs, they shall be credited to the Federal award either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.

b. In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance activities or service operations of the governmental unit should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items (including any amounts used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements) should be recognized in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to Federal awards. (See Attachment B, item 11, "Depreciation and use allowances," for areas of potential application in the matter of Federal financing of activities.)

#### D. Composition of Cost

1. Total cost. The total cost of Federal awards is comprised of the allowable direct cost of the program, plus its allocable portion of allowable indirect costs, less applicable credits.

2. Classification of costs. There is no universal rule for classifying certain costs as either direct or indirect under every accounting system. A cost may be direct with respect to some specific service or function, but indirect with respect to the Federal award or other final cost objective. Therefore, it is essential that each item of cost be treated consistently in like circumstances either as a direct or an indirect cost. Guidelines for determining direct and indirect costs charged to Federal awards are provided in the sections that follow.

#### E. Direct Costs

1. General. Direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective.

2. Application. Typical direct costs chargeable to Federal awards are:

a. Compensation of employees for the time devoted and identified specifically to the

performance of those awards.

b. Cost of materials acquired, consumed, or expended specifically for the purpose of those awards.

c. Equipment and other approved capital expenditures.

d. Travel expenses incurred specifically to carry out the award.

3. Minor items. Any direct cost of a minor amount may be treated as an indirect cost for reasons of practicality where such accounting treatment for that item of cost is consistently applied to all cost objectives.

#### F. Indirect Costs

1. General. Indirect costs are those: (a) incurred for a common or joint purpose benefiting more than one cost objective, and (b) not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefitted, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. The term "indirect costs," as used herein, applies to costs of this type originating in the grantee department, as well as those incurred by other departments in supplying goods, services, and facilities. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect costs within a governmental unit department or in other agencies providing services to a governmental unit department. Indirect cost pools should be distributed to benefitted cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.

2. Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals. Requirements for development and submission of cost allocation plans and indirect cost rate proposals are contained in Attachments C, D, and E.

3. Limitation on indirect or administrative costs.

a. In addition to restrictions contained in this Circular, there may be laws that further limit the amount of administrative or indirect cost allowed.

b. Amounts not recoverable as indirect costs or administrative costs under one Federal award may not be shifted to another Federal award, unless specifically authorized by Federal legislation or regulation.

G. Interagency Services. The cost of services provided by one agency to another within the governmental unit may include allowable direct costs of the service plus a pro rate share of indirect costs. A standard indirect cost allowance equal to ten percent of the direct salary and wage cost of providing the service (excluding overtime, shift premiums, and fringe benefits) may be used in lieu of determining the actual indirect costs of the service. These services do not include centralized services included in central service cost allocation plans as described in Attachment C.

H. Required Certifications. Each cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal required by Attachments C and E must comply with the following:

1. No proposal to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate, whether submitted to a Federal cognizant agency or maintained on file by the governmental unit, shall be acceptable unless such costs have been certified by the governmental unit using the Certificate of Cost Allocation Plan or Certificate of Indirect Costs as set forth in Attachments C and E. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the governmental unit by an individual at a level no lower than chief financial officer of the governmental unit that submits the proposal or component covered by the proposal.

2. No cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate shall be approved by the Federal Government unless the plan or rate proposal has been certified. Where it is necessary to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate and the governmental unit has not submitted a certified proposal for establishing such a plan or rate in accordance with the requirements, the Federal Government may either disallow all indirect costs or unilaterally establish such a plan or rate. Such a plan or rate may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant Federal agency and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate is unilaterally established by the Federal Government because of failure of the governmental unit to submit a certified proposal, the plan or rate established will be set to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Advertising and public relations costs
2. Advisory councils
3. Alcoholic beverages
4. Audit costs and related services
5. Bad debts
6. Bonding costs
7. Communication costs
8. Compensation for personal services
9. Contingency provisions
10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims
11. Depreciation and use allowances
12. Donations and contributions
13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs
14. Entertainment costs
15. Equipment and other capital expenditures
16. Fines and penalties
17. Fund raising and investment management costs
18. Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable property and other capital assets and substantial relocation of Federal programs
19. General government expenses

20. Goods or services for personal use
21. Idle facilities and idle capacity
22. Insurance and indemnification
23. Interest
24. Lobbying
25. Maintenance, operations, and repairs
26. Materials and supplies costs
27. Meetings and conferences
28. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs
29. Patent costs
30. Plant and homeland security costs
31. Pre-award costs
32. Professional service costs
33. Proposal costs
34. Publication and printing costs
35. Rearrangement and alteration costs
36. Reconversion costs
37. Rental costs of building and equipment
38. Royalties and other costs for the use of patents
39. Selling and marketing
40. Taxes
41. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements
42. Training costs
43. Travel costs.

Sections 1 through 43 provide principles to be applied in establishing the allowability or unallowability of certain items of cost. These principles apply whether a cost is treated as direct or indirect. A cost is allowable for Federal reimbursement only to the extent of benefits received by Federal awards and its conformance with the general policies and principles stated in Attachment A to this Circular. Failure to mention a particular item of cost in these sections is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination of allowability in each case should be based on the treatment or standards provided for similar or related items of cost.

1. Advertising and public relations costs.

a. The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs.

Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

b. The term public relations includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the governmental unit or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

c. The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required for the performance by the governmental unit of obligations arising under a Federal award ;

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;

(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when governmental units are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

d. The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of Federal awards (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of Federal contract/grant awards, financial matters, etc.

e. Costs identified in subsections c and d if incurred for more than one Federal award or for both sponsored work and other work of the governmental unit, are allowable to the extent that the principles in Attachment A, sections E. (“Direct Costs”) and F. (“Indirect Costs”) are observed.

f. Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in subsections c, d, and e;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the governmental unit, including:

(a) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;

(b) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and

(c) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the governmental unit.

2. Advisory councils. Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are allowable as a direct cost where authorized by the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards.

3. Alcoholic beverages. Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

4. Audit costs and related services.

a. The costs of audits required by , and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 31 USC 7505(b) and section 230 (“Audit Costs”) of Circular A-133.

b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award

c. The cost of agreed-upon procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients who are exempted from A-133 under section 200(d) are allowable, subject to the conditions listed in A-133, section 230 (b)(2).

5. Bad debts. Bad debts, including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectable accounts and other claims, related collection costs, and related legal costs, are

unallowable.

6. Bonding costs.

a. Bonding costs arise when the Federal Government requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the governmental unit. They arise also in instances where the governmental unit requires similar assurance. Included are such bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds.

b. Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms of the award are allowable.

c. Costs of bonding required by the governmental unit in the general conduct of its operations are allowable to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

7. Communication costs. Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance telephone calls, telegrams, postage, messenger, electronic or computer transmittal services and the like are allowable.

8. Compensation for personal services.

a. General. Compensation for personnel services includes all remuneration, paid currently or accrued, for services rendered during the period of performance under Federal awards, including but not necessarily limited to wages, salaries, and fringe benefits. The costs of such compensation are allowable to the extent that they satisfy the specific requirements of this Circular, and that the total compensation for individual employees:

(1) Is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established policy of the governmental unit consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities;

(2) Follows an appointment made in accordance with a governmental unit's laws and rules and meets merit system or other requirements required by Federal law, where applicable; and

(3) Is determined and supported as provided in subsection h.

b. Reasonableness. Compensation for employees engaged in work on Federal awards will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in other activities of the governmental unit. In cases where the kinds of employees required for Federal awards are not found in the other activities of the governmental unit, compensation will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor

market in which the employing government competes for the kind of employees involved. Compensation surveys providing data representative of the labor market involved will be an acceptable basis for evaluating reasonableness.

c. Unallowable costs. Costs which are unallowable under other sections of these principles shall not be allowable under this section solely on the basis that they constitute personnel compensation.

d. Fringe benefits.

(1) Fringe benefits are allowances and services provided by employers to their employees as compensation in addition to regular salaries and wages. Fringe benefits include, but are not limited to, the costs of leave, employee insurance, pensions, and unemployment benefit plans. Except as provided elsewhere in these principles, the costs of fringe benefits are allowable to the extent that the benefits are reasonable and are required by law, governmental unit-employee agreement, or an established policy of the governmental unit.

(2) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as for annual leave, sick leave, holidays, court leave, military leave, and other similar benefits, are allowable if: (a) they are provided under established written leave policies; (b) the costs are equitably allocated to all related activities, including Federal awards; and, (c) the accounting basis (cash or accrual) selected for costing each type of leave is consistently followed by the governmental unit.

(3) When a governmental unit uses the cash basis of accounting, the cost of leave is recognized in the period that the leave is taken and paid for. Payments for unused leave when an employee retires or terminates employment are allowable in the year of payment provided they are allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the governmental unit or component.

(4) The accrual basis may be only used for those types of leave for which a liability as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) exists when the leave is earned. When a governmental unit uses the accrual basis of accounting, in accordance with GAAP, allowable leave costs are the lesser of the amount accrued or funded.

(5) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security; employee life, health, unemployment, and worker's compensation insurance (except as indicated in section 22, Insurance and indemnification); pension plan costs (see subsection e.); and other similar benefits are allowable, provided such benefits are granted under established written policies. Such benefits, whether treated as indirect costs or as direct costs, shall be allocated to Federal awards and all other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits attributable to the individuals or group(s) of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such Federal awards and other activities.

e. Pension plan costs. Pension plan costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the governmental unit.

(1) For pension plans financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) Pension costs calculated using an actuarial cost- based method recognized by GAAP are allowable for a given fiscal year if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursement and the governmental unit's contribution to the pension fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the pension fund.

(3) Amounts funded by the governmental unit in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the governmental unit's contribution in future periods.

(4) When a governmental unit converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method, as defined by GAAP, and funds pension costs in accordance with this method, the unfunded liability at the time of conversion shall be allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP.

(5) The Federal Government shall receive an equitable share of any previously allowed pension costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the governmental unit in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

f. Post-retirement health benefits. Post-retirement health benefits (PRHB) refers to costs of health insurance or health services not included in a pension plan covered by subsection e. for retirees and their spouses, dependents, and survivors. PRHB costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the governmental unit.

(1) For PRHB financed on a pay as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) PRHB costs calculated using an actuarial cost method recognized by GAAP are allowable if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursements and the governmental unit's contributions to the PRHB fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund, reduction in current year's PRHB costs, or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the PRHB fund.

(3) Amounts funded in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the government's contribution in a future period.

(4) When a governmental unit converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method and funds PRHB costs in accordance with this method, the initial unfunded liability attributable to prior years

shall be allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP, or, if no such GAAP period exists, over a period negotiated with the cognizant agency.

(5) To be allowable in the current year, the PRHB costs must be paid either to:

(a) An insurer or other benefit provider as current year costs or premiums, or

(b) An insurer or trustee to maintain a trust fund or reserve for the sole purpose of providing post-retirement benefits to retirees and other beneficiaries.

(6) The Federal Government shall receive an equitable share of any amounts of previously allowed post-retirement benefit costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the governmental unit in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

g. Severance pay.

(1) Payments in addition to regular salaries and wages made to workers whose employment is being terminated are allowable to the extent that, in each case, they are required by (a) law, (b) employer-employee agreement, or (c) established written policy.

(2) Severance payments (but not accruals) associated with normal turnover are allowable. Such payments shall be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit as an indirect cost.

(3) Abnormal or mass severance pay will be considered on a case-by-case basis and is allowable only if approved by the cognizant Federal agency.

h. Support of salaries and wages. These standards regarding time distribution are in addition to the standards for payroll documentation.

(1) Charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages, whether treated as direct or indirect costs, will be based on payrolls documented in accordance with generally accepted practice of the governmental unit and approved by a responsible official(s) of the governmental unit.

(2) No further documentation is required for the salaries and wages of employees who work in a single indirect cost activity.

(3) Where employees are expected to work solely on a single Federal award or cost objective, charges for their salaries and wages will be supported by periodic certifications that the employees worked solely on that program for the period covered by the certification. These certifications will be prepared at least semi-annually and will be signed by the employee or supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the work performed by the employee.

(4) Where employees work on multiple activities or cost objectives, a distribution of their salaries or wages will be supported by personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation which meets the standards in subsection (5) unless a statistical sampling system (see subsection (6)) or other substitute system has been approved by the cognizant Federal agency. Such documentary support will be required where employees work on:

- (a) More than one Federal award,
  - (b) A Federal award and a non-Federal award,
  - (c) An indirect cost activity and a direct cost activity,
  - (d) Two or more indirect activities which are allocated using different allocation bases, or
  - (e) An unallowable activity and a direct or indirect cost activity.
- (5) Personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation must meet the following standards:
- (a) They must reflect an after-the-fact distribution of the actual activity of each employee,
  - (b) They must account for the total activity for which each employee is compensated,
  - (c) They must be prepared at least monthly and must coincide with one or more pay periods, and
  - (d) They must be signed by the employee.
- (e) Budget estimates or other distribution percentages determined before the services are performed do not qualify as support for charges to Federal awards but may be used for interim accounting purposes, provided that:
- (i) The governmental unit's system for establishing the estimates produces reasonable approximations of the activity actually performed;
  - (ii) At least quarterly, comparisons of actual costs to budgeted distributions based on the monthly activity reports are made. Costs charged to Federal awards to reflect adjustments made as a result of the activity actually performed may be recorded annually if the quarterly comparisons show the differences between budgeted and actual costs are less than ten percent; and
  - (iii) The budget estimates or other distribution percentages are revised at least quarterly, if necessary, to reflect changed circumstances.
- (6) Substitute systems for allocating salaries and wages to Federal awards may be used in place of activity reports. These systems are subject to approval if required by the cognizant agency. Such systems may include, but are not limited to, random moment sampling, case counts, or other quantifiable measures of employee effort.
- (a) Substitute systems which use sampling methods (primarily for Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (TANF), Medicaid, and other public assistance programs) must meet acceptable statistical sampling standards including:
- (i) The sampling universe must include all of the employees whose salaries and wages are to be allocated based on sample results except as provided in subsection (c);

(ii) The entire time period involved must be covered by the sample; and

(iii) The results must be statistically valid and applied to the period being sampled.

(b) Allocating charges for the sampled employees' supervisors, clerical and support staffs, based on the results of the sampled employees, will be acceptable.

(c) Less than full compliance with the statistical sampling standards noted in subsection (a) may be accepted by the cognizant agency if it concludes that the amounts to be allocated to Federal awards will be minimal, or if it concludes that the system proposed by the governmental unit will result in lower costs to Federal awards than a system which complies with the standards.

(7) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements of Federal awards must be supported in the same manner as those claimed as allowable costs under Federal awards.

i. Donated services.

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to a governmental unit by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the provisions of the Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the governmental unit's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs.

(3) To the extent feasible, donated services will be supported by the same methods used by the governmental unit to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

9. Contingency provisions. Contributions to a contingency reserve or any similar provision made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to time, intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable. The term "contingency reserve" excludes self-insurance reserves (see Attachment B, section 22.c.), pension plan reserves (see Attachment B, section 8.e.), and post-retirement health and other benefit reserves (see Attachment B, section 8.f.) computed using acceptable actuarial cost methods.

10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims.

a. The following costs are unallowable for contracts covered by 10 U.S.C. 2324(k), "Allowable costs under defense contracts."

(1) Costs incurred in defense of any civil or criminal fraud proceeding or similar proceeding (including filing of false certification brought by the United States where the contractor is found liable or has pleaded nolo contendere to a charge of fraud or similar proceeding (including filing

of a false certification).

(2) Costs incurred by a contractor in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceedings commenced by the United States or a State to the extent provided in 10 U.S.C. 2324(k).

b. Legal expenses required in the administration of Federal programs are allowable. Legal expenses for prosecution of claims against the Federal Government are unallowable.

#### 11. Depreciation and use allowances.

a. Depreciation and use allowances are means of allocating the cost of fixed assets to periods benefiting from asset use. Compensation for the use of fixed assets on hand may be made through depreciation or use allowances. A combination of the two methods may not be used in connection with a single class of fixed assets (e.g., buildings, office equipment, computer equipment, etc.) except as provided for in subsection g. Except for enterprise funds and internal service funds that are included as part of a State/local cost allocation plan, classes of assets shall be determined on the same basis used for the government-wide financial statements.

b. The computation of depreciation or use allowances shall be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. Where actual cost records have not been maintained, a reasonable estimate of the original acquisition cost may be used. The value of an asset donated to the governmental unit by an unrelated third party shall be its fair market value at the time of donation. Governmental or quasi-governmental organizations located within the same State shall not be considered unrelated third parties for this purpose.

c. The computation of depreciation or use allowances will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it presently resides; and

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the governmental unit, or a related donor organization, in satisfaction of a matching requirement.

d. Where the depreciation method is followed, the period of useful service (useful life) established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment used, historical usage patterns, technological developments, and the renewal and replacement policies of the governmental unit followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved. In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater in the early portions than in the later portions of its useful life, the straight line method of depreciation shall be used.

Depreciation methods once used shall not be changed unless approved by the Federal cognizant or awarding agency. When the depreciation method is introduced for application to an asset

previously subject to a use allowance, the annual depreciation charge thereon may not exceed the amount that would have resulted had the depreciation method been in effect from the date of acquisition of the asset. The combination of use allowances and depreciation applicable to the asset shall not exceed the total acquisition cost of the asset or fair market value at time of donation.

e. When the depreciation method is used for buildings, a building's shell may be segregated from the major component of the building (e.g., plumbing system, heating, and air conditioning system, etc.) and each major component depreciated over its estimated useful life, or the entire building (i.e., the shell and all components) may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life.

f. Where the use allowance method is followed, the use allowance for buildings and improvements (including land improvements, such as paved parking areas, fences, and sidewalks) will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding two percent of acquisition costs. The use allowance for equipment will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding  $6 \frac{2}{3}$  percent of acquisition cost. When the use allowance method is used for buildings, the entire building must be treated as a single asset; the building's components (e.g., plumbing system, heating and air condition, etc.) cannot be segregated from the building's shell.

The two percent limitation, however, need not be applied to equipment which is merely attached or fastened to the building but not permanently fixed to it and which is used as furnishings or decorations or for specialized purposes (e.g., dentist chairs and dental treatment units, counters, laboratory benches bolted to the floor, dishwashers, modular furniture, carpeting, etc.). Such equipment will be considered as not being permanently fixed to the building if it can be removed without the destruction of, or need for costly or extensive alterations or repairs, to the building or the equipment. Equipment that meets these criteria will be subject to the  $6 \frac{2}{3}$  percent equipment use allowance limitation.

g. A reasonable use allowance may be negotiated for any assets that are considered to be fully depreciated, after taking into consideration the amount of depreciation previously charged to the government, the estimated useful life remaining at the time of negotiation, the effect of any increased maintenance charges, decreased efficiency due to age, and any other factors pertinent to the utilization of the asset for the purpose contemplated.

h. Charges for use allowances or depreciation must be supported by adequate property records. Physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years (a statistical sampling approach is acceptable) to ensure that assets exist, and are in use. Governmental units will manage equipment in accordance with State laws and procedures. When the depreciation method is followed, depreciation records indicating the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

## 12. Donations and contributions.

a. Contributions or donations rendered. Contributions or donations, including cash, property, and services, made by the governmental unit, regardless of the recipient, are unallowable.

b. Donated services received:

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to a governmental unit by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the Federal Grants Management Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the governmental unit's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs.

(3) To the extent feasible, donated services will be supported by the same methods used by the governmental unit to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs.

a. The costs of employee information publications, health or first-aid clinics and/or infirmaries, recreational activities, employee counseling services, and any other expenses incurred in accordance with the governmental unit's established practice or custom for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee morale, and employee performance are allowable.

b. Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the governmental unit. Income generated from any of these activities will be offset against expenses.

14. Entertainment. Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any costs directly associated with such costs (such as tickets to shows or sports events, meals, lodging, rentals, transportation, and gratuities) are unallowable.

15. Equipment and other capital expenditures.

a. For purposes of this subsection 15, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Capital Expenditures" means expenditures for the acquisition cost of capital assets (equipment, buildings, land), or expenditures to make improvements to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life. Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to put it in place. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in, or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the governmental

unit's regular accounting practices.

(2) "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the governmental unit for financial statement purposes, or \$5000.

(3) "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.

(4) "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles.

b. The following rules of allowability shall apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except where approved in advance by the awarding agency.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5000 or more have the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to Attachment B, section 15.b (1), (2), and (3) above, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate and negotiated with the awarding agency. In addition, Federal awarding agencies are authorized at their option to waive or delegate the prior approval requirement.

(5) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. However, see section 11, Depreciation and use allowance, for rules on the allowability of use allowances or depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. Also, see section 37, Rental costs, concerning the allowability of rental costs for land, buildings, and equipment.

(6) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable use allowances or depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the cognizant agency.

(7) When replacing equipment purchased in whole or in part with Federal funds, the governmental unit may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use

the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.

16. Fines and penalties. Fines, penalties, damages, and other settlements resulting from violations (or alleged violations) of, or failure of the governmental unit to comply with, Federal, State, local, or Indian tribal laws and regulations are unallowable except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of the Federal award or written instructions by the awarding agency authorizing in advance such payments.

17. Fund raising and investment management costs.

a. Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable, regardless of the purpose for which the funds will be used.

b. Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred to enhance income from investments are unallowable. However, such costs associated with investments covering pension, self-insurance, or other funds which include Federal participation allowed by this Circular are allowable.

c. Fund raising and investment activities shall be allocated an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in subsection C.3.b. of Attachment A.

18. Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable property and other capital assets and substantial relocation of Federal programs.

a. (1) Gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property shall be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to the asset cost grouping(s) in which the property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate asset cost grouping(s) shall be the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(2) Gains and losses on the disposition of depreciable property shall not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(a) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under sections 11 and 15.

(b) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.

(c) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in subsection 22.d.

(d) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation.

b. Substantial relocation of Federal awards from a facility where the Federal Government

participated in the financing to another facility prior to the expiration of the useful life of the financed facility requires Federal agency approval. The extent of the relocation, the amount of the Federal participation in the financing, and the depreciation charged to date may require negotiation of space charges for Federal awards.

c. Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in subsection a., e.g., land or included in the fair market value used in any adjustment resulting from a relocation of Federal awards covered in subsection b. shall be excluded in computing Federal award costs.

#### 19. General government expenses.

a. The general costs of government are unallowable (except as provided in Attachment B, section 43, Travel costs). These include:

(1) Salaries and expenses of the Office of the Governor of a State or the chief executive of a political subdivision or the chief executive of federally-recognized Indian tribal government;

(2) Salaries and other expenses of a State legislature, tribal council, or similar local governmental body, such as a county supervisor, city council, school board, etc., whether incurred for purposes of legislation or executive direction;

(3) Costs of the judiciary branch of a government;

(4) Costs of prosecutorial activities unless treated as a direct cost to a specific program if authorized by program statute or regulation (however, this does not preclude the allowability of other legal activities of the Attorney General); and

(5) Costs of other general types of government services normally provided to the general public, such as fire and police, unless provided for as a direct cost under a program statute or regulation.

b. For federally-recognized Indian tribal governments and Councils Of Governments (COGs), the portion of salaries and expenses directly attributable to managing and operating Federal programs by the chief executive and his staff is allowable

20. Goods or services for personal use. Costs of goods or services for personal use of the governmental unit's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

#### 21. Idle facilities and idle capacity.

a. As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

(1) "Facilities" means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the governmental unit.

(2) "Idle facilities" means completely unused facilities that are excess to the governmental unit's current needs.

(3) "Idle capacity" means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between: (a) that which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays; and (b) the extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) "Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity" means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g., insurance, interest, property taxes and depreciation or use allowances.

b. The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subsection, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

c. The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

## 22. Insurance and indemnification.

a. Costs of insurance required or approved and maintained, pursuant to the Federal award, are allowable.

b. Costs of other insurance in connection with the general conduct of activities are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(1) Types and extent and cost of coverage are in accordance with the governmental unit's policy and sound business practice.

(2) Costs of insurance or of contributions to any reserve covering the risk of loss of, or damage

to, Federal Government property are unallowable except to the extent that the awarding agency has specifically required or approved such costs.

c. Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through a self-insurance program or otherwise) are unallowable, unless expressly provided for in the Federal award or as described below. However, the Federal Government will participate in actual losses of a self insurance fund that are in excess of reserves. Costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound management practice, and minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and disappearance of small hand tools, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

d. Contributions to a reserve for certain self-insurance programs including workers compensation, unemployment compensation, and severance pay are allowable subject to the following provisions:

(1) The type of coverage and the extent of coverage and the rates and premiums would have been allowed had insurance (including reinsurance) been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, shall not exceed the discounted present value of the liability. The rate used for discounting the liability must be determined by giving consideration to such factors as the governmental unit's settlement rate for those liabilities and its investment rate of return.

(2) Earnings or investment income on reserves must be credited to those reserves.

(3) Contributions to reserves must be based on sound actuarial principles using historical experience and reasonable assumptions. Reserve levels must be analyzed and updated at least biennially for each major risk being insured and take into account any reinsurance, coinsurance, etc. Reserve levels related to employee-related coverages will normally be limited to the value of claims (a) submitted and adjudicated but not paid, (b) submitted but not adjudicated, and (c) incurred but not submitted. Reserve levels in excess of the amounts based on the above must be identified and justified in the cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal.

(4) Accounting records, actuarial studies, and cost allocations (or billings) must recognize any significant differences due to types of insured risk and losses generated by the various insured activities or agencies of the governmental unit. If individual departments or agencies of the governmental unit experience significantly different levels of claims for a particular risk, those differences are to be recognized by the use of separate allocations or other techniques resulting in an equitable allocation.

(5) Whenever funds are transferred from a self-insurance reserve to other accounts (e.g., general fund), refunds shall be made to the Federal Government for its share of funds transferred, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer.

e. Actual claims paid to or on behalf of employees or former employees for workers'

compensation, unemployment compensation, severance pay, and similar employee benefits (e.g., subsection 8.f. for post retirement health benefits), are allowable in the year of payment provided (1) the governmental unit follows a consistent costing policy and (2) they are allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the governmental unit.

f. Insurance refunds shall be credited against insurance costs in the year the refund is received.

g. Indemnification includes securing the governmental unit against liabilities to third persons and other losses not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the governmental unit only to the extent expressly provided for in the Federal award, except as provided in subsection d.

h. Costs of commercial insurance that protects against the costs of the contractor for correction of the contractor's own defects in materials or workmanship are unallowable.

### 23. Interest.

a. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital or the use of a governmental unit's own funds, however represented, are unallowable except as specifically provided in subsection b. or authorized by Federal legislation.

b. Financing costs (including interest) paid or incurred which are associated with the otherwise allowable costs of building acquisition, construction, or fabrication, reconstruction or remodeling completed on or after October 1, 1980 is allowable subject to the conditions in (1) through (4) of this section 23.b. Financing costs (including interest) paid or incurred on or after September 1, 1995 for land or associated with otherwise allowable costs of equipment is allowable, subject to the conditions in (1) through (4).

- (1) The financing is provided (from other than tax or user fee sources) by a bona fide third party external to the governmental unit;
- (2) These assets are used in support of Federal awards;
- (3) Earnings on debt service reserve funds or interest earned on borrowed funds pending payment of the construction or acquisition costs are used to offset the current period's cost or the capitalized interest, as appropriate. Earnings subject to being reported to the Federal Internal Revenue Service under arbitrage requirements are excludable.
- (4) For debt arrangements over \$1 million, unless the governmental unit makes an initial equity contribution to the asset purchase of 25 percent or more, the governmental unit shall reduce claims for interest cost by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow, which is to be calculated as follows. Annually, non-Federal entities shall prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash flows that includes inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. Inflows consist of depreciation expense, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest cost. For cash flow calculations, the annual inflow figures shall be divided by the number of months in the year

(i.e., usually 12) that the building is in service for monthly amounts. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro rata share attributable to the unallowable costs of land) and interest payments. Where cumulative inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest shall be calculated on the excess inflows for that period and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest cost. The rate of interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three-month Treasury bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(5) Interest attributable to fully depreciated assets is unallowable.

24. Lobbying.

a. General. The cost of certain influencing activities associated with obtaining grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, or loans is an unallowable cost. Lobbying with respect to certain grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, and loans shall be governed by the common rule, "New Restrictions on Lobbying" published at 55 FR 6736 (February 26, 1990), including definitions, and the Office of Management and Budget "Government-wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying" and notices published at 54 FR 52306 (December 20, 1989), 55 FR 24540 (June 15, 1990), and 57 FR 1772 (January 15, 1992), respectively.

b. Executive lobbying costs. Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a sponsored agreement or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a federally-sponsored agreement or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

25. Maintenance, operations, and repairs. Unless prohibited by law, the cost of utilities, insurance, security, janitorial services, elevator service, upkeep of grounds, necessary maintenance, normal repairs and alterations, and the like are allowable to the extent that they: (1) keep property (including Federal property, unless otherwise provided for) in an efficient operating condition, (2) do not add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life, and (3) are not otherwise included in rental or other charges for space. Costs which add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see sections 11 and 15).

26. Materials and supplies costs.

a. Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

b. Purchased materials and supplies shall be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

c. Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs.

d. Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

27. Meetings and conferences. Costs of meetings and conferences, the primary purpose of which is the dissemination of technical information, are allowable. This includes costs of meals, transportation, rental of facilities, speakers' fees, and other items incidental to such meetings or conferences. But see Attachment B, section 14, Entertainment costs.

28. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.

a. Costs of the governmental unit's memberships in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

b. Costs of the governmental unit's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

c. Costs of membership in civic and community, social organizations are allowable as a direct cost with the approval of the Federal awarding agency.

d. Costs of membership in organizations substantially engaged in lobbying are unallowable.

29. Patent costs.

a. The following costs relating to patent and copyright matters are allowable: (i) cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures; (ii) cost of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and (iii) general counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee agreements (but see Attachment B, sections 32, Professional service costs, and 38, Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights).

b. The following costs related to patent and copyright matter are unallowable:

(i) Cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make disclosures not required by the award

(ii) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or (ii) any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government (but see Attachment B, section 38., Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights).

30. Plant and homeland security costs. Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and homeland security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; contractual security services; consultants; etc. Capital expenditures for homeland and plant security purposes are subject to section 15., Equipment and other capital expenditures, of this Circular.

31. Pre-award costs. Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the award directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the award where such costs are necessary to comply with the proposed delivery schedule or period of performance. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the award and only with the written approval of the awarding agency.

32. Professional service costs.

a. Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the governmental unit, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs b and c when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government.

In addition, legal and related services are limited under Attachment B, section 10.

b. In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

(1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.

(2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the governmental unit's capability in the particular area.

(3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.

(4) The impact of Federal awards on the governmental unit's business (i.e., what new problems have arisen).

(5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the governmental unit's total business is such as to influence the governmental unit in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal grants and contracts.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.

(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-Federal awards.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service (e.g., description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

c. In addition to the factors in subparagraph b, retainer fees to be allowable must be supported by available or rendered evidence of bona fide services available or rendered.

33. Proposal costs. Costs of preparing proposals for potential Federal awards are allowable. Proposal costs should normally be treated as indirect costs and should be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit utilizing the cost allocation plan and indirect cost rate proposal. However, proposal costs may be charged directly to Federal awards with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

34. Publication and printing costs.

a. Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, platemaking, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.

b. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the governmental unit.

c. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs where:

(1) The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government: and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors

35. Rearrangement and alteration costs. Costs incurred for ordinary and normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable. Special arrangements and alterations costs incurred specifically for a Federal award are allowable with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

36. Reconversion costs. Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the governmental unit's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

37. Rental costs of buildings and equipment.

a. Subject to the limitations described in subsections b. through d. of this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and, the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be

reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

b. Rental costs under “sale and lease back” arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the governmental unit continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation or use allowance, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

c. Rental costs under "less-than-arms-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in Attachment B, section 37.b) that would be allowed had title to the property vested in the governmental unit. For this purpose, a less-than-arms-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between (i) divisions of a governmental unit; (ii) governmental units under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and (iii) a governmental unit and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the governmental unit or his immediate family, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, a governmental unit may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the governmental unit.

d. Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subsection b) that would be allowed had the governmental unit purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement 13, Accounting for Leases, shall be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in Attachment B, section 23. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the governmental unit purchased the facility.

38. Royalties and other costs for the use of patents.

a. Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the award are allowable unless:

- (1) The Federal Government has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.
- (2) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.
- (3) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.
- (4) The patent or copyright is expired.

b. Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have

been arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, e.g.:

- (1) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the governmental unit.
- (2) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.
- (3) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after an award is made to a governmental unit.

c. In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the governmental unit, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the governmental unit retained title thereto.

39. Selling and marketing. Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the governmental unit are unallowable (unless allowed under Attachment B, section 1. as allowable public relations costs or under Attachment B, section 33. as allowable proposal costs.

40. Taxes.

a. Taxes that a governmental unit is legally required to pay are allowable, except for self-assessed taxes that disproportionately affect Federal programs or changes in tax policies that disproportionately affect Federal programs. This provision becomes effective for taxes paid during the governmental unit's first fiscal year that begins on or after January 1, 1998, and applies thereafter.

b. Gasoline taxes, motor vehicle fees, and other taxes that are in effect user fees for benefits provided to the Federal Government are allowable.

c. This provision does not restrict the authority of Federal agencies to identify taxes where Federal participation is inappropriate. Where the identification of the amount of unallowable taxes would require an inordinate amount of effort, the cognizant agency may accept a reasonable approximation thereof.

41. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements. Termination of awards generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth below. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this Circular in termination situations.

a. The cost of items reasonably usable on the governmental unit's other work shall not be allowable unless the governmental unit submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the governmental unit, the awarding agency should consider the governmental unit's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity.

Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the governmental unit shall be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the governmental unit's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award shall be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

b. If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the governmental unit, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this Circular, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the governmental unit to discontinue such costs shall be unallowable.

c. Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and equipment is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the governmental unit,

(2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the awarding agency, and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, machinery, or equipment was acquired.

d. Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) the amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) the governmental unit makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

e. Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(a) The preparation and presentation to the awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for default (see Subpart \_\_.44 of the Grants Management Common Rule implementing OMB Circular A-102); and

(b) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal Government or acquired or produced for the Federal award, except when grantees or contractors are reimbursed for disposals at a predetermined amount in accordance with Subparts \_\_.31 and \_\_.32 of the Grants Management Common Rule implementing OMB Circular A-102.

f. Claims under subawards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award, and to other work of the governmental unit are generally allowable.

An appropriate share of the governmental unit's indirect expense may be allocated to the amount of settlements with subcontractors and/or subgrantees, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in Attachment A. The indirect expense so allocated shall exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

42. Training costs. The cost of training provided for employee development is allowable.

43. Travel costs.

a. General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the governmental unit. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the governmental unit's non-federally-sponsored activities. Notwithstanding the provisions of Attachment B, section 19, General government expenses, travel costs of officials covered by that section are allowable with the prior approval of an awarding agency when they are specifically related to Federal awards.

b. Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the governmental unit in its regular operations as the result of the governmental unit's written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written governmental unit policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

c. Commercial air travel.

(1) Airfare costs in excess of the customary standard commercial airfare (coach or equivalent), Federal Government contract airfare (where authorized and available), or the lowest commercial discount airfare are unallowable except when such accommodations would:

- (a) require circuitous routing;
- (b) require travel during unreasonable hours;
- (c) excessively prolong travel;
- (d) result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or
- (e) offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The governmental unit must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question a governmental unit's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the governmental unit can demonstrate either of the following: (a) that such airfare was not available in the specific case; or (b) that it is the governmental unit's overall practice to make routine use of such airfare.

d. Air travel by other than commercial carrier. Costs of travel by governmental unit-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of allowable commercial air travel, as provided for in subsection c., is unallowable.

e. Foreign travel. Direct charges for foreign travel costs are allowable only when the travel has received prior approval of the awarding agency. Each separate foreign trip must receive such approval. For purposes of this provision, "foreign travel" includes any travel outside Canada, Mexico, the United States, and any United States territories and possessions. However, the term "foreign travel" for a governmental unit located in a foreign country means travel outside that country.

---

ATTACHMENT C

Circular No. A-87

STATE/LOCAL-WIDE CENTRAL SERVICE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. General

B. Definitions

1. Billed central services
2. Allocated central services
3. Agency or operating agency
- C. Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans
- D. Submission Requirements
- E. Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans
  1. General
  2. Allocated central services
  3. Billed services
    - a. General
    - b. Internal service funds
    - c. Self-insurance funds
    - d. Fringe benefits
  4. Required certification
- F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans
- G. Other Policies
  1. Billed central service activities
  2. Working capital reserves
  3. Carry-forward adjustments of allocated central service costs
  4. Adjustments of billed central services
  5. Records retention
  6. Appeals
  7. OMB assistance
- A. General.

1. Most governmental units provide certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since federally-supported awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process. All costs and other data used to distribute the costs included in the plan should be supported by formal accounting and other records that will support the propriety of the costs assigned to Federal awards.

2. Guidelines and illustrations of central service cost allocation plans are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government." A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

#### B. Definitions.

1. "Billed central services" means central services that are billed to benefitted agencies and/or programs on an individual fee-for-service or similar basis. Typical examples of billed central services include computer services, transportation services, insurance, and fringe benefits.

2. "Allocated central services" means central services that benefit operating agencies but are not billed to the agencies on a fee-for-service or similar basis. These costs are allocated to benefitted agencies on some reasonable basis. Examples of such services might include general accounting, personnel administration, purchasing, etc.

3. "Agency or operating agency" means an organizational unit or sub-division within a governmental unit that is responsible for the performance or administration of awards or activities of the governmental unit.

C. Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans. The central service cost allocation plan will include all central service costs that will be claimed (either as a billed or an allocated cost) under Federal awards and will be documented as described in section E. Costs of central services omitted from the plan will not be reimbursed.

#### D. Submission Requirements.

1. Each State will submit a plan to the Department of Health and Human Services for each year in which it claims central service costs under Federal awards. The plan should include (a) a projection of the next year's allocated central service cost (based either on actual costs for the most recently completed year or the budget projection for the coming year), and (b) a reconciliation of actual allocated central service costs to the estimated costs used for either the most recently completed year or the year immediately preceding the most recently completed year.

2. Each local government that has been designated as a "major local government" by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) is also required to submit a plan to its cognizant agency annually. OMB periodically lists major local governments in the Federal Register.

3. All other local governments claiming central service costs must develop a plan in accordance with the requirements described in this Circular and maintain the plan and related supporting documentation for audit. These local governments are not required to submit their plans for Federal approval unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency. Where a local government only receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating indirect cost rates and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan.

4. All central service cost allocation plans will be prepared and, when required, submitted within six months prior to the beginning of each of the governmental unit's fiscal years in which it proposes to claim central service costs. Extensions may be granted by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis.

E. Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans. The documentation requirements described in this section may be modified, expanded, or reduced by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis. For example, the requirements may be reduced for those central services which have little or no impact on Federal awards. Conversely, if a review of a plan indicates that certain additional information is needed, and will likely be needed in future years, it may be routinely requested in future plan submissions. Items marked with an asterisk (\*) should be submitted only once; subsequent plans should merely indicate any changes since the last plan.

1. General. All proposed plans must be accompanied by the following: an organization chart sufficiently detailed to show operations including the central service activities of the State/local government whether or not they are shown as benefiting from central service functions; a copy of the Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (or a copy of the Executive Budget if budgeted costs are being proposed) to support the allowable costs of each central service activity included in the plan; and, a certification (see subsection 4.) that the plan was prepared in accordance with this Circular, contains only allowable costs, and was prepared in a manner that treated similar costs consistently among the various Federal awards and between Federal and non-Federal awards/activities.

2. Allocated central services. For each allocated central service, the plan must also include the following: a brief description of the service\*, an identification of the unit rendering the service and the operating agencies receiving the service, the items of expense included in the cost of the service, the method used to distribute the cost of the service to benefitted agencies, and a summary schedule showing the allocation of each service to the specific benefitted

agencies. If any self-insurance funds or fringe benefits costs are treated as allocated (rather than billed) central services, documentation discussed in subsections 3.b. and c. shall also be included.

3. Billed services.

a. General. The information described below shall be provided for all billed central services, including internal service funds, self-insurance funds, and fringe benefit funds.

b. Internal service funds.

(1) For each internal service fund or similar activity with an operating budget of \$5 million or more, the plan shall include: a brief description of each service; a balance sheet for each fund based on individual accounts contained in the governmental unit's accounting system; a revenue/expenses statement, with revenues broken out by source, e.g., regular billings, interest earned, etc.; a listing of all non-operating transfers (as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP)) into and out of the fund; a description of the procedures (methodology) used to charge the costs of each service to users, including how billing rates are determined; a schedule of current rates; and, a schedule comparing total revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service to the allowable costs of the service, as determined under this Circular, with an explanation of how variances will be handled.

(2) Revenues shall consist of all revenues generated by the service, including unbilled and uncollected revenues. If some users were not billed for the services (or were not billed at the full rate for that class of users), a schedule showing the full imputed revenues associated with these users shall be provided. Expenses shall be broken out by object cost categories (e.g., salaries, supplies, etc.).

c. Self-insurance funds. For each self-insurance fund, the plan shall include: the fund balance sheet; a statement of revenue and expenses including a summary of billings and claims paid by agency; a listing of all non-operating transfers into and out of the fund; the type(s) of risk(s) covered by the fund (e.g., automobile liability, workers' compensation, etc.); an explanation of how the level of fund contributions are determined, including a copy of the current actuarial report (with the actuarial assumptions used) if the contributions are determined on an actuarial basis; and, a description of the procedures used to charge or allocate fund contributions to benefitted activities. Reserve levels in excess of claims (1) submitted and adjudicated but not paid, (2) submitted but not adjudicated, and (3) incurred but not submitted must be identified and explained.

d. Fringe benefits. For fringe benefit costs, the plan shall include: a listing of fringe benefits provided to covered employees, and the overall annual cost of each type of benefit; current fringe benefit policies\*; and procedures used to charge or allocate the costs of the benefits to benefitted activities. In addition, for pension and post-retirement health insurance plans, the following information shall be provided: the governmental unit's funding policies, e.g., legislative bills, trust agreements, or State-mandated contribution rules, if different from actuarially determined rates; the pension plan's costs accrued for the year; the amount funded, and date(s) of funding; a copy of the current actuarial report (including the actuarial assumptions); the plan trustee's report; and, a schedule from the activity showing the value of the interest cost associated with late funding.

4. Required certification. Each central service cost allocation plan will be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

## CERTIFICATE OF COST ALLOCATION PLAN

This is to certify that I have reviewed the cost allocation plan submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish cost allocations or billings for [identify period covered by plan] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of OMB Circular A-87, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments," and the Federal award(s) to which they apply. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Official: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Execution: \_\_\_\_\_

### F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans.

1. All proposed central service cost allocation plans that are required to be submitted will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the Federal cognizant agency on a timely basis. The cognizant agency will review the proposal within six months of receipt of the proposal and either negotiate/approve the proposal or advise the governmental unit of the additional documentation needed to support/evaluate the proposed plan or the changes required to make the proposal acceptable. Once an agreement with the governmental unit has been reached, the agreement will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies, unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal funding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special consideration, the funding agency will, prior to the time the plans are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency.

2. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The results of the negotiation shall be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

3. Negotiated cost allocation plans based on a proposal later found to have included costs that: (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in Attachment B of this Circular, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards, shall be adjusted, or a refund shall be made at the option of the Federal cognizant agency. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the plans and do not constitute a reopening of the negotiation.

#### G. Other Policies.

1. Billed central service activities. Each billed central service activity must separately account for all revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service, expenses incurred to furnish the service, and profit/loss.

2. Working capital reserves. Internal service funds are dependent upon a reasonable level of working capital reserve to operate from one billing cycle to the next. Charges by an internal service activity to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a reasonable level of working capital reserve, in addition to the full recovery of costs, are allowable. A working capital reserve as part of retained earnings of up to 60 days cash expenses for normal operating purposes is considered reasonable. A working capital reserve exceeding 60 days may be approved by the cognizant Federal agency in exceptional cases.

3. Carry-forward adjustments of allocated central service costs. Allocated central service costs are usually negotiated and approved for a future fiscal year on a "fixed with carry-forward" basis. Under this procedure, the fixed amounts for the future year covered by agreement are not subject to adjustment for that year. However, when the actual costs of the year involved become known, the differences between the fixed amounts previously approved and the actual costs will be carried forward and used as an adjustment to the fixed amounts established for a later year. This "carry-forward" procedure applies to all central services whose costs were fixed in the approved plan. However, a carry-forward adjustment is not permitted, for a central service activity that was not included in the approved plan, or for unallowable costs that must be reimbursed immediately.

4. Adjustments of billed central services. Billing rates used to charge Federal awards shall be based on the estimated costs of providing the services, including an estimate of the allocable central service costs. A comparison of the revenue generated by each billed service (including total revenues whether or not billed or collected) to the actual allowable costs of the service will be made at least annually, and an adjustment will be made for the difference between the revenue and the allowable costs. These adjustments will be made through one of the following adjustment methods: (a) a cash refund to the Federal Government for the Federal share of the adjustment, (b) credits to the amounts charged to the individual programs, (c) adjustments to future billing rates, or (d) adjustments to allocated central service costs. Adjustments to allocated central services will not be permitted where the total amount of the adjustment for a particular service (Federal share and non-Federal) share exceeds \$500,000.

5. Records retention. All central service cost allocation plans and related documentation used as a basis for claiming costs under Federal awards must be retained for audit in accordance with the

records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

6. Appeals. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.

7. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

---

ATTACHMENT D

Circular No. A-87

## PUBLIC ASSISTANCE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### A. General

#### B. Definitions

##### 1. State public assistance agency

##### 2. State public assistance agency costs

#### C. Policy

#### D. Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

#### E. Review of Implementation of Approved Plans

#### F. Unallowable Costs

A. General. Federally-financed programs administered by State public assistance agencies are funded predominately by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). In support of its stewardship requirements, HHS has published requirements for the development, documentation, submission, negotiation, and approval of public assistance cost allocation plans in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. All administrative costs (direct and indirect) are normally charged to Federal awards by implementing the public assistance cost allocation plan. This Attachment extends these requirements to all Federal agencies whose programs are administered by a State public assistance agency. Major federally-financed programs typically administered by State public assistance agencies include: *Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (TANF)*, Medicaid, Food Stamps, Child Support Enforcement, Adoption Assistance and Foster Care, and Social Services Block Grant.

#### B. Definitions.

1. "State public assistance agency" means a State agency administering or supervising the administration of one or more public assistance programs operated by the State as identified in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. For the purpose of this Attachment, these programs include all programs administered by the State public assistance agency.

2. "State public assistance agency costs" means all costs incurred by, or allocable to, the State public assistance agency, except expenditures for financial assistance, medical vendor payments, food stamps, and payments for services and goods provided directly to program recipients.

C. Policy. State public assistance agencies will develop, document and implement, and the Federal Government will review, negotiate, and approve, public assistance cost allocation plans in accordance with Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. The plan will include all programs administered by the State public assistance agency. Where a letter of approval or disapproval is transmitted to a State public assistance agency in accordance with Subpart E, the letter will apply to all Federal agencies and programs. The remaining sections of this Attachment (except for the requirement for certification) summarize the provisions of Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

D. Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans.

1. State public assistance agencies are required to promptly submit amendments to the cost allocation plan to HHS for review and approval.

2. Under the coordination process outlined in subsection E, affected Federal agencies will review all new plans and plan amendments and provide comments, as appropriate, to HHS. The effective date of the plan or plan amendment will be the first day of the quarter following the submission of the plan or amendment, unless another date is specifically approved by HHS. HHS, as the cognizant agency acting on behalf of all affected Federal agencies, will, as necessary, conduct negotiations with the State public assistance agency and will inform the State agency of the action taken on the plan or plan amendment.

E. Review of Implementation of Approved Plans.

1. Since public assistance cost allocation plans are of a narrative nature, the review during the plan approval process consists of evaluating the appropriateness of the proposed groupings of costs (cost centers) and the related allocation bases. As such, the Federal Government needs some assurance that the cost allocation plan has been implemented as approved. This is accomplished by reviews by the funding agencies, single audits, or audits conducted by the cognizant audit agency.

2. Where inappropriate charges affecting more than one funding agency are identified, the cognizant HHS cost negotiation office will be advised and will take the lead in resolving the issue(s) as provided for in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

3. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan or from a disallowance involving two or more

funding agencies, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures set out in 45 CFR Part 75. Disputes involving only one funding agency will be resolved in accordance with the funding agency's appeal process.

4. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, the Office of Management and Budget will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

F. Unallowable Costs. Claims developed under approved cost allocation plans will be based on allowable costs as identified in this Circular. Where unallowable costs have been claimed and reimbursed, they will be refunded to the program that reimbursed the unallowable cost using one of the following methods: (a) a cash refund, (b) offset to a subsequent claim, or (c) credits to the amounts charged to individual awards.

---

ATTACHMENT E

Circular No. A-87

## STATE AND LOCAL INDIRECT COST RATE PROPOSALS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### A. General

#### B. Definitions

##### 1. Indirect cost rate proposal

##### 2. Indirect cost rate

##### 3. Indirect cost pool

##### 4. Base

##### 5. Predetermined rate

##### 6. Fixed rate

##### 7. Provisional rate

##### 8. Final rate

##### 9. Base period

#### C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

##### 1. General

2. Simplified method

3. Multiple allocation base method

4. Special indirect cost rates

D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals

1. Submission of indirect cost rate proposals

2. Documentation of proposals

3. Required certification

E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates

F. Other Policies

1. Fringe benefit rates

2. Billed services provided by the grantee agency

3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates

4. Appeals

5. Collections of unallowable costs and erroneous payments

6. OMB assistance

A. General.

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint purposes. These costs benefit more than one cost objective and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to Federal awards and other activities as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefitted cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

2. Indirect costs include (a) the indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and (b) the costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan (as described in Attachment C) and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

3. Indirect costs are normally charged to Federal awards by the use of an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) is usually necessary for each department or agency of the

governmental unit claiming indirect costs under Federal awards. Guidelines and illustrations of indirect cost proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government." A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

4. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of governmental units, the types of costs which may be classified as indirect costs cannot be specified in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect costs may include certain State/local-wide central service costs, general administration of the grantee department or agency, accounting and personnel services performed within the grantee department or agency, depreciation or use allowances on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, etc.

5. This Attachment does not apply to State public assistance agencies. These agencies should refer instead to Attachment D.

#### B. Definitions.

1. "Indirect cost rate proposal" means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or subdivision thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate.

2. "Indirect cost rate" is a device for determining in a reasonable manner the proportion of indirect costs each program should bear. It is the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the indirect costs to a direct cost base.

3. "Indirect cost pool" is the accumulated costs that jointly benefit two or more programs or other cost objectives.

4. "Base" means the accumulated direct costs (normally either total direct salaries and wages or total direct costs exclusive of any extraordinary or distorting expenditures) used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The direct cost base selected should result in each award bearing a fair share of the indirect costs in reasonable relation to the benefits received from the costs.

5. "Predetermined rate" means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the governmental unit's fiscal year. This rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. Except under very unusual circumstances, a predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment. (Because of legal constraints, predetermined rates are not permitted for Federal contracts; they may, however, be used for grants or cooperative agreements.) Predetermined rates may not be used by governmental units that have not submitted and negotiated the rate with the cognizant agency. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

6. "Fixed rate" means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual, allowable costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

7. "Provisional rate" means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a "final" rate for that period.

8. "Final rate" means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual allowable costs of the period. A final audited rate is not subject to adjustment.

9. "Base period" for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to activities performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the governmental unit's fiscal year, but in any event, shall be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of costs.

### C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates.

#### 1. General.

a. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from the indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures as described in subsection 2.

b. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, the allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subsections 2, 3 and 4.

#### 2. Simplified method.

a. Where a grantee agency's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by (1) classifying the grantee agency's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and (2) dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function encompassing a number of individual

projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to that department or agency is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs shall exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs must be included in the direct costs if they represent activities to which indirect costs are properly allocable.

c. The distribution base may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as pass-through funds, major subcontracts, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution.

### 3. Multiple allocation base method.

a. Where a grantee agency's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, such costs shall be accumulated into separate cost groupings. Each grouping shall then be allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits.

b. The cost groupings should be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping should constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of the functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The number of separate groupings should be held within practical limits, taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision needed.

c. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitted functions. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation shall be made in that manner. When the expenses in a grouping are more general in nature, the allocation should be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the governmental unit. In general, any cost element or related factor associated with the governmental unit's activities is potentially adaptable for use as an allocation base provided that: (1) it can readily be expressed in terms of dollars or other quantitative measures (total direct costs, direct salaries and wages, staff hours applied, square feet used, hours of usage, number of documents processed, population served, and the like), and (2) it is common to the benefitted functions during the base period.

d. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with subsection 4, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function shall be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool shall then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

e. The distribution base used in computing the indirect cost rate for each function may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items such as pass-through funds, major subcontracts, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution. An indirect cost rate should be developed for each separate indirect

cost pool developed. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage relationship between the particular indirect cost pool and the distribution base identified with that pool.

#### 4. Special indirect cost rates.

a. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of a grantee department or agency or for each major function of the agency may not be appropriate. It may not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular program or group of programs. The factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular award is carried out in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to that award. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided that: (1) the rate differs significantly from the rate which would have been developed under subsections 2. and 3., and (2) the award to which the rate would apply is material in amount.

b. Although this Circular adopts the concept of the full allocation of indirect costs, there are some Federal statutes which restrict the reimbursement of certain indirect costs. Where such restrictions exist, it may be necessary to develop a special rate for the affected award. Where a "restricted rate" is required, the procedure for developing a non-restricted rate will be used except for the additional step of the elimination from the indirect cost pool those costs for which the law prohibits reimbursement.

#### D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals.

##### 1. Submission of indirect cost rate proposals.

a. All departments or agencies of the governmental unit desiring to claim indirect costs under Federal awards must prepare an indirect cost rate proposal and related documentation to support those costs. The proposal and related documentation must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

b. A governmental unit for which a cognizant agency assignment has been specifically designated must submit its indirect cost rate proposal to its cognizant agency. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will periodically publish lists of governmental units identifying the appropriate Federal cognizant agencies. The cognizant agency for all governmental units or agencies not identified by OMB will be determined based on the Federal agency providing the largest amount of Federal funds. In these cases, a governmental unit must develop an indirect cost proposal in accordance with the requirements of this Circular and maintain the proposal and related supporting documentation for audit. These governmental units are not required to submit their proposals unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency. Where a local government only receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan.

c. Each Indian tribal government desiring reimbursement of indirect costs must submit its indirect cost proposal to the Department of the Interior (its cognizant Federal agency).

d. Indirect cost proposals must be developed (and, when required, submitted) within six months after the close of the governmental unit's fiscal year, unless an exception is approved by the cognizant Federal agency. If the proposed central service cost allocation plan for the same period has not been approved by that time, the indirect cost proposal may be prepared including an amount for central services that is based on the latest federally-approved central service cost allocation plan. The difference between these central service amounts and the amounts ultimately approved will be compensated for by an adjustment in a subsequent period.

2. Documentation of proposals. The following shall be included with each indirect cost proposal:

a. The rates proposed, including subsidiary work sheets and other relevant data, cross referenced and reconciled to the financial data noted in subsection b. Allocated central service costs will be supported by the summary table included in the approved central service cost allocation plan. This summary table is not required to be submitted with the indirect cost proposal if the central service cost allocation plan for the same fiscal year has been approved by the cognizant agency and is available to the funding agency.

b. A copy of the financial data (financial statements, comprehensive annual financial report, executive budgets, accounting reports, etc.) upon which the rate is based. Adjustments resulting from the use of unaudited data will be recognized, where appropriate, by the Federal cognizant agency in a subsequent proposal.

c. The approximate amount of direct base costs incurred under Federal awards. These costs should be broken out between salaries and wages and other direct costs.

d. A chart showing the organizational structure of the agency during the period for which the proposal applies, along with a functional statement(s) noting the duties and/or responsibilities of all units that comprise the agency. (Once this is submitted, only revisions need be submitted with subsequent proposals.)

3. Required certification. Each indirect cost rate proposal shall be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

### **CERTIFICATE OF INDIRECT COSTS**

This is to certify that I have reviewed the indirect cost rate proposal submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect costs rates for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal award(s) to which they apply and OMB Circular A-87, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments." Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently and the Federal Government will be notified of any accounting changes that would affect the predetermined rate.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Official: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Execution: \_\_\_\_\_

E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates.

1. Indirect cost rates will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant Federal agency on a timely basis. Once a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal funding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special indirect cost rates, the funding agency will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant Federal agency.

2. The use of predetermined rates, if allowed, is encouraged where the cognizant agency has reasonable assurance based on past experience and reliable projection of the grantee agency's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on actual costs. Long-term agreements utilizing predetermined rates extending over two or more years are encouraged, where appropriate.

3. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute, or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The agreed upon rates shall be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Refunds shall be made if proposals are later found to have included costs that (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in Attachment B of this Circular, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards. These adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

F. Other Policies.

1. Fringe benefit rates. If overall fringe benefit rates are not approved for the governmental unit as part of the central service cost allocation plan, these rates will be reviewed, negotiated and approved for individual grantee agencies during the indirect cost negotiation process. In these cases, a proposed fringe benefit rate computation should accompany the indirect cost proposal. If fringe benefit rates are not used at the grantee agency level (i.e., the agency specifically identifies fringe benefit costs to individual employees), the governmental unit should so advise the cognizant agency.
2. Billed services provided by the grantee agency. In some cases, governmental units provide and bill for services similar to those covered by central service cost allocation plans (e.g., computer centers). Where this occurs, the governmental unit should be guided by the requirements in Attachment C relating to the development of billing rates and documentation requirements, and should advise the cognizant agency of any billed services. Reviews of these types of services (including reviews of costing/billing methodology, profits or losses, etc.) will be made on a case-by-case basis as warranted by the circumstances involved.
3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates. In certain situations, a governmental unit, because of the nature of its awards, may be required to develop a cost allocation plan that distributes indirect (and, in some cases, direct) costs to the specific funding sources. In these cases, a narrative cost allocation methodology should be developed, documented, maintained for audit, or submitted, as appropriate, to the cognizant agency for review, negotiation, and approval.
4. Appeals. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate (or other rate) between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.
5. Collection of unallowable costs and erroneous payments. Costs specifically identified as unallowable and charged to Federal awards either directly or indirectly will be refunded (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations).
6. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

## Circular No. A-133

Revised to show changes published in the *Federal Register* June 27, 2003  
Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations

TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS

SUBJECT: Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations

1. Purpose. This Circular is issued pursuant to the Single Audit Act of 1984, P.L. 98-502, and the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, P.L. 104-156. It sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of States, local governments, and non-profit organizations expending Federal awards.

2. Authority. Circular A-133 is issued under the authority of sections 503, 1111, and 7501 *et seq.* of title 31, United States Code, and Executive Orders 8248 and 11541.

3. Rescission and Supersession. This Circular rescinds Circular A-128, "Audits of State and Local Governments," issued April 12, 1985, and supersedes the prior Circular A-133, "Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Non-Profit Institutions," issued April 22, 1996. For effective dates, see paragraph 10.

4. Policy. Except as provided herein, the standards set forth in this Circular shall be applied by all Federal agencies. If any statute specifically prescribes policies or specific requirements that differ from the standards provided herein, the provisions of the subsequent statute shall govern.

Federal agencies shall apply the provisions of the sections of this Circular to non-Federal entities, whether they are recipients expending Federal awards received directly from Federal awarding agencies, or are subrecipients expending Federal awards received from a pass-through entity (a recipient or another subrecipient).

This Circular does not apply to non-U.S. based entities expending Federal awards received either directly as a recipient or indirectly as a subrecipient.

5. Definitions. The definitions of key terms used in this Circular are contained in §\_\_\_105 in the Attachment to this Circular.

6. Required Action. The specific requirements and responsibilities of Federal agencies and non-Federal entities are set forth in the Attachment to this Circular. Federal agencies making awards to non-Federal entities, either directly or indirectly, shall adopt the language in the Circular in codified regulations as provided in Section 10 (below), unless different provisions are required by Federal statute or are approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

7. OMB Responsibilities. OMB will review Federal agency regulations and implementation of this Circular, and will provide interpretations of policy requirements and assistance to ensure uniform, effective and efficient implementation.

8. Information Contact. Further information concerning Circular A-133 may be obtained by contacting the Financial Standards and Reporting Branch, Office of Federal Financial Management, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, telephone (202) 395-3993.

9. Review Date. This Circular will have a policy review three years from the date of issuance.

10. Effective Dates. The standards set forth in §\_\_\_.400 of the Attachment to this Circular, which apply directly to Federal agencies, shall be effective July 1, 1996, and shall apply to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1996, except as otherwise specified in §\_\_\_.400(a).

The standards set forth in this Circular that Federal agencies shall apply to non-Federal entities shall be adopted by Federal agencies in codified regulations not later than 60 days after publication of this final revision in the *Federal Register*, so that they will apply to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1996, with the exception that §\_\_\_.305(b) of the Attachment applies to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1998. The requirements of Circular A-128, although the Circular is rescinded, and the 1990 version of Circular A-133 remain in effect for audits of fiscal years beginning on or before June 30, 1996.

The revisions published in the *Federal Register* June 27, 2003, are effective for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003, and early implementation is not permitted with the exception of the definition of *oversight agency for audit* which is effective July 28, 2003.

Augustine T. Smythe  
Acting Director

Attachment

PART \_\_ --AUDITS OF STATES, LOCAL GOVERNMENTS, AND NON-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS

Subpart A--General

Sec.

- \_\_.100 Purpose.
- \_\_.105 Definitions.

Subpart B--Audits

- \_\_.200 Audit requirements.
- \_\_.205 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.
- \_\_.210 Subrecipient and vendor determinations.
- \_\_.215 Relation to other audit requirements.
- \_\_.220 Frequency of audits.
- \_\_.225 Sanctions.
- \_\_.230 Audit costs.
- \_\_.235 Program-specific audits.

Subpart C--Auditees

- \_\_.300 Auditee responsibilities.
- \_\_.305 Auditor selection.
- \_\_.310 Financial statements.
- \_\_.315 Audit findings follow-up.
- \_\_.320 Report submission.

Subpart D--Federal Agencies and Pass-Through Entities

- \_\_.400 Responsibilities.
- \_\_.405 Management decision.

Subpart E--Auditors

- \_\_.500 Scope of audit.
- \_\_.505 Audit reporting.
- \_\_.510 Audit findings.
- \_\_.515 Audit working papers.
- \_\_.520 Major program determination.
- \_\_.525 Criteria for Federal program risk.
- \_\_.530 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

Appendix A to Part \_\_ - Data Collection Form (Form SF-SAC).

Appendix B to Part \_\_ - Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement.

**Subpart A--General**  
**§ \_\_.100 Purpose.**

This part sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of non-Federal entities expending Federal awards.

**§ \_\_.105 Definitions.**

Auditee means any non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards which must be audited under this part.

Auditor means an auditor, that is a public accountant or a Federal, State or local government audit organization, which meets the general standards specified in generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). The term auditor does not include internal auditors of non-profit organizations.

Audit finding means deficiencies which the auditor is required by § \_\_.510(a) to report in the schedule of findings and questioned costs.

CFDA number means the number assigned to a Federal program in the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA).

Cluster of programs means a grouping of closely related programs that share common compliance requirements. The types of clusters of programs are research and development (R&D), student financial aid (SFA), and other clusters. "Other clusters" are as defined by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) in the compliance supplement or as designated by a State for Federal awards the State provides to its subrecipients that meet the definition of a cluster of programs. When designating an "other cluster," a State shall identify the Federal awards included in the cluster and advise the subrecipients of compliance requirements applicable to the cluster, consistent with § \_\_.400(d)(1) and § \_\_.400(d)(2), respectively. A cluster of programs shall be considered as one program for determining major programs, as described in § \_\_.520, and, with the exception of R&D as described in § \_\_.200(c), whether a program-specific audit may be elected.

Cognizant agency for audit means the Federal agency designated to carry out the responsibilities described in § \_\_.400(a).

Compliance supplement refers to the Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement, included as Appendix B to Circular A-133, or such documents as OMB or its designee may issue to replace it. This document is available from the Government Printing Office, Superintendent of Documents, Washington, DC 20402-9325.

Corrective action means action taken by the auditee that:

- (1) Corrects identified deficiencies;
- (2) Produces recommended improvements; or
- (3) Demonstrates that audit findings are either invalid or do not warrant auditee action.

Federal agency has the same meaning as the term agency in Section 551(1) of title 5, United States Code.

Federal award means Federal financial assistance and Federal cost-reimbursement contracts that non-Federal entities receive directly from Federal awarding agencies or indirectly from pass-through entities. It does

not include procurement contracts, under grants or contracts, used to buy goods or services from vendors. Any audits of such vendors shall be covered by the terms and conditions of the contract. Contracts to operate Federal Government owned, contractor operated facilities (GOCOs) are excluded from the requirements of this part.

Federal awarding agency means the Federal agency that provides an award directly to the recipient.

Federal financial assistance means assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of grants, loans, loan guarantees, property (including donated surplus property), cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, food commodities, direct appropriations, and other assistance, but does not include amounts received as reimbursement for services rendered to individuals as described in § \_\_.205(h) and § \_\_.205(i).

Federal program means:

(1) All Federal awards to a non-Federal entity assigned a single number in the CFDA.

(2) When no CFDA number is assigned, all Federal awards from the same agency made for the same purpose should be combined and considered one program.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2) of this definition, a cluster of programs. The types of clusters of programs are:

(i) Research and development (R&D);

(ii) Student financial aid (SFA); and

(iii) "Other clusters," as described in the definition of cluster of programs in this section.

GAGAS means generally accepted government auditing standards issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, which are applicable to financial audits.

Generally accepted accounting principles has the meaning specified in generally accepted auditing standards issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA).

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaskan Native village or regional or village corporation (as defined in, or established under, the Alaskan Native Claims Settlement Act) that is recognized by the United States as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

Internal control means a process, effected by an entity's management and other personnel, designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

(1) Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;

(2) Reliability of financial reporting; and

(3) Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

Internal control pertaining to the compliance requirements for Federal programs (Internal control over Federal programs) means a process--effected by

an entity's management and other personnel--designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of the following objectives for Federal programs:

- (1) Transactions are properly recorded and accounted for to:
  - (i) Permit the preparation of reliable financial statements and Federal reports;
  - (ii) Maintain accountability over assets; and
  - (iii) Demonstrate compliance with laws, regulations, and other compliance requirements;
- (2) Transactions are executed in compliance with:
  - (i) Laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a direct and material effect on a Federal program; and
  - (ii) Any other laws and regulations that are identified in the compliance supplement; and
- (3) Funds, property, and other assets are safeguarded against loss from unauthorized use or disposition.

Loan means a Federal loan or loan guarantee received or administered by a non-Federal entity.

Local government means any unit of local government within a State, including a county, borough, municipality, city, town, township, parish, local public authority, special district, school district, intrastate district, council of governments, and any other instrumentality of local government.

Major program means a Federal program determined by the auditor to be a major program in accordance with § \_\_\_\_.520 or a program identified as a major program by a Federal agency or pass-through entity in accordance with § \_\_\_\_.215(c).

Management decision means the evaluation by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity of the audit findings and corrective action plan and the issuance of a written decision as to what corrective action is necessary.

Non-Federal entity means a State, local government, or non-profit organization.

Non-profit organization means:

- (1) any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization that:
  - (i) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;
  - (ii) Is not organized primarily for profit; and
  - (iii) Uses its net proceeds to maintain, improve, or expand its operations; and
- (2) The term non-profit organization includes non-profit institutions of higher education and hospitals.

OMB means the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

Oversight agency for audit means the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of direct funding to a recipient not assigned a cognizant agency for audit. When there is no direct funding, the Federal agency with the predominant indirect funding shall assume the oversight responsibilities. The duties of the oversight agency for audit are described in § \_\_\_.400(b).

*Effective July 28, 2003, the following is added to this definition:*  
A Federal agency with oversight for an auditee may reassign oversight to another Federal agency which provides substantial funding and agrees to be the oversight agency for audit. Within 30 days after any reassignment, both the old and the new oversight agency for audit shall notify the auditee, and, if known, the auditor of the reassignment."

Pass-through entity means a non-Federal entity that provides a Federal award to a subrecipient to carry out a Federal program.

Program-specific audit means an audit of one Federal program as provided for in § \_\_\_.200(c) and § \_\_\_.235.

Questioned cost means a cost that is questioned by the auditor because of an audit finding:

(1) Which resulted from a violation or possible violation of a provision of a law, regulation, contract, grant, cooperative agreement, or other agreement or document governing the use of Federal funds, including funds used to match Federal funds;

(2) Where the costs, at the time of the audit, are not supported by adequate documentation; or

(3) Where the costs incurred appear unreasonable and do not reflect the actions a prudent person would take in the circumstances.

Recipient means a non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards received directly from a Federal awarding agency to carry out a Federal program.

Research and development (R&D) means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are performed by a non-Federal entity. Research is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function. Development is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

Single audit means an audit which includes both the entity's financial statements and the Federal awards as described in § \_\_\_.500.

State means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Trust Territory of the

Pacific Islands, any instrumentality thereof, any multi-State, regional, or interstate entity which has governmental functions, and any Indian tribe as defined in this section.

Student Financial Aid (SFA) includes those programs of general student assistance, such as those authorized by Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965, as amended, (20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq.) which is administered by the U.S. Department of Education, and similar programs provided by other Federal agencies. It does not include programs which provide fellowships or similar Federal awards to students on a competitive basis, or for specified studies or research.

Subrecipient means a non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards received from a pass-through entity to carry out a Federal program, but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such a program. A subrecipient may also be a recipient of other Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency. Guidance on distinguishing between a subrecipient and a vendor is provided in §     .210.

Types of compliance requirements refers to the types of compliance requirements listed in the compliance supplement. Examples include: activities allowed or unallowed; allowable costs/cost principles; cash management; eligibility; matching, level of effort, earmarking; and, reporting.

Vendor means a dealer, distributor, merchant, or other seller providing goods or services that are required for the conduct of a Federal program. These goods or services may be for an organization's own use or for the use of beneficiaries of the Federal program. Additional guidance on distinguishing between a subrecipient and a vendor is provided in §     .210.

#### **Subpart B--Audits**

##### **§     .200     Audit requirements.**

(a) Audit required. Non-Federal entities that expend \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) or more in a year in Federal awards shall have a single or program-specific audit conducted for that year in accordance with the provisions of this part. Guidance on determining Federal awards expended is provided in §     .205.

(b) Single audit. Non-Federal entities that expend \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) or more in a year in Federal awards shall have a single audit conducted in accordance with §     .500 except when they elect to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Program-specific audit election. When an auditee expends Federal awards under only one Federal program (excluding R&D) and the Federal program's laws, regulations, or grant agreements do not require a financial statement audit of the auditee, the auditee may elect to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with §     .235. A program-specific audit may not be elected for R&D unless all of the Federal awards expended were received from the same Federal agency, or the same Federal agency and the same pass-through entity, and that Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, approves in advance a program-specific audit.

(d) Exemption when Federal awards expended are less than \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*). Non-Federal

entities that expend less than \$300,000 (\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003) a year in Federal awards are exempt from Federal audit requirements for that year, except as noted in §\_\_\_\_.215(a), but records must be available for review or audit by appropriate officials of the Federal agency, pass-through entity, and General Accounting Office (GAO).

(e) Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDC). Management of an auditee that owns or operates a FFRDC may elect to treat the FFRDC as a separate entity for purposes of this part.

**§\_\_\_\_.205 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.**

(a) Determining Federal awards expended. The determination of when an award is expended should be based on when the activity related to the award occurs. Generally, the activity pertains to events that require the non-Federal entity to comply with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements, such as: expenditure/expense transactions associated with grants, cost-reimbursement contracts, cooperative agreements, and direct appropriations; the disbursement of funds passed through to subrecipients; the use of loan proceeds under loan and loan guarantee programs; the receipt of property; the receipt of surplus property; the receipt or use of program income; the distribution or consumption of food commodities; the disbursement of amounts entitling the non-Federal entity to an interest subsidy; and, the period when insurance is in force.

(b) Loan and loan guarantees (loans). Since the Federal Government is at risk for loans until the debt is repaid, the following guidelines shall be used to calculate the value of Federal awards expended under loan programs, except as noted in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section:

(1) Value of new loans made or received during the fiscal year;  
plus

(2) Balance of loans from previous years for which the Federal Government imposes continuing compliance requirements; plus

(3) Any interest subsidy, cash, or administrative cost allowance received.

(c) Loan and loan guarantees (loans) at institutions of higher education. When loans are made to students of an institution of higher education but the institution does not make the loans, then only the value of loans made during the year shall be considered Federal awards expended in that year. The balance of loans for previous years is not included as Federal awards expended because the lender accounts for the prior balances.

(d) Prior loan and loan guarantees (loans). Loans, the proceeds of which were received and expended in prior-years, are not considered Federal awards expended under this part when the laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements pertaining to such loans impose no continuing compliance requirements other than to repay the loans.

(e) Endowment funds. The cumulative balance of Federal awards for endowment funds which are federally restricted are considered awards expended in each year in which the funds are still restricted.

(f) Free rent. Free rent received by itself is not considered a Federal award expended under this part. However, free rent received as part

of an award to carry out a Federal program shall be included in determining Federal awards expended and subject to audit under this part.

(g) Valuing non-cash assistance. Federal non-cash assistance, such as free rent, food stamps, food commodities, donated property, or donated surplus property, shall be valued at fair market value at the time of receipt or the assessed value provided by the Federal agency.

(h) Medicare. Medicare payments to a non-Federal entity for providing patient care services to Medicare eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this part.

(i) Medicaid. Medicaid payments to a subrecipient for providing patient care services to Medicaid eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this part unless a State requires the funds to be treated as Federal awards expended because reimbursement is on a cost-reimbursement basis.

(j) Certain loans provided by the National Credit Union Administration. For purposes of this part, loans made from the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund and the Central Liquidity Facility that are funded by contributions from insured institutions are not considered Federal awards expended.

**§ \_\_.210 Subrecipient and vendor determinations.**

(a) General. An auditee may be a recipient, a subrecipient, and a vendor. Federal awards expended as a recipient or a subrecipient would be subject to audit under this part. The payments received for goods or services provided as a vendor would not be considered Federal awards. The guidance in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section should be considered in determining whether payments constitute a Federal award or a payment for goods and services.

(b) Federal award. Characteristics indicative of a Federal award received by a subrecipient are when the organization:

- (1) Determines who is eligible to receive what Federal financial assistance;
- (2) Has its performance measured against whether the objectives of the Federal program are met;
- (3) Has responsibility for programmatic decision making;
- (4) Has responsibility for adherence to applicable Federal program compliance requirements; and
- (5) Uses the Federal funds to carry out a program of the organization as compared to providing goods or services for a program of the pass-through entity.

(c) Payment for goods and services. Characteristics indicative of a payment for goods and services received by a vendor are when the organization:

- (1) Provides the goods and services within normal business operations;

- (2) Provides similar goods or services to many different purchasers;
- (3) Operates in a competitive environment;
- (4) Provides goods or services that are ancillary to the operation of the Federal program; and
- (5) Is not subject to compliance requirements of the Federal program.

(d) Use of judgment in making determination. There may be unusual circumstances or exceptions to the listed characteristics. In making the determination of whether a subrecipient or vendor relationship exists, the substance of the relationship is more important than the form of the agreement. It is not expected that all of the characteristics will be present and judgment should be used in determining whether an entity is a subrecipient or vendor.

(e) For-profit subrecipient. Since this part does not apply to for-profit subrecipients, the pass-through entity is responsible for establishing requirements, as necessary, to ensure compliance by for-profit subrecipients. The contract with the for-profit subrecipient should describe applicable compliance requirements and the for-profit subrecipient's compliance responsibility. Methods to ensure compliance for Federal awards made to for-profit subrecipients may include pre-award audits, monitoring during the contract, and post-award audits.

(f) Compliance responsibility for vendors. In most cases, the auditee's compliance responsibility for vendors is only to ensure that the procurement, receipt, and payment for goods and services comply with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements. Program compliance requirements normally do not pass through to vendors. However, the auditee is responsible for ensuring compliance for vendor transactions which are structured such that the vendor is responsible for program compliance or the vendor's records must be reviewed to determine program compliance. Also, when these vendor transactions relate to a major program, the scope of the audit shall include determining whether these transactions are in compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements.

**§ .215 Relation to other audit requirements.**

(a) Audit under this part in lieu of other audits. An audit made in accordance with this part shall be in lieu of any financial audit required under individual Federal awards. To the extent this audit meets a Federal agency's needs, it shall rely upon and use such audits. The provisions of this part neither limit the authority of Federal agencies, including their Inspectors General, or GAO to conduct or arrange for additional audits (e.g., financial audits, performance audits, evaluations, inspections, or reviews) nor authorize any auditee to constrain Federal agencies from carrying out additional audits. Any additional audits shall be planned and performed in such a way as to build upon work performed by other auditors.

(b) Federal agency to pay for additional audits. A Federal agency that conducts or contracts for additional audits shall, consistent with other applicable laws and regulations, arrange for funding the full cost of such additional audits.

(c) Request for a program to be audited as a major program. A Federal agency may request an auditee to have a particular Federal program audited as a major program in lieu of the Federal agency conducting or arranging for the additional audits. To allow for planning, such requests should be made at least 180 days prior to the end of the fiscal year to be audited. The auditee, after consultation with its auditor, should promptly respond to such request by informing the Federal agency whether the program would otherwise be audited as a major program using the risk-based audit approach described in § \_\_.520 and, if not, the estimated incremental cost. The Federal agency shall then promptly confirm to the auditee whether it wants the program audited as a major program. If the program is to be audited as a major program based upon this Federal agency request, and the Federal agency agrees to pay the full incremental costs, then the auditee shall have the program audited as a major program. A pass-through entity may use the provisions of this paragraph for a subrecipient.

**§ \_\_.220 Frequency of audits.**

Except for the provisions for biennial audits provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, audits required by this part shall be performed annually. Any biennial audit shall cover both years within the biennial period.

(a) A State or local government that is required by constitution or statute, in effect on January 1, 1987, to undergo its audits less frequently than annually, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this part biennially. This requirement must still be in effect for the biennial period under audit.

(b) Any non-profit organization that had biennial audits for all biennial periods ending between July 1, 1992, and January 1, 1995, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this part biennially.

**§ \_\_.225 Sanctions.**

No audit costs may be charged to Federal awards when audits required by this part have not been made or have been made but not in accordance with this part. In cases of continued inability or unwillingness to have an audit conducted in accordance with this part, Federal agencies and pass-through entities shall take appropriate action using sanctions such as:

(a) Withholding a percentage of Federal awards until the audit is completed satisfactorily;

(b) Withholding or disallowing overhead costs;

(c) Suspending Federal awards until the audit is conducted; or

(d) Terminating the Federal award.

**§ \_\_.230 Audit costs.**

(a) Allowable costs. Unless prohibited by law, the cost of audits made in accordance with the provisions of this part are allowable charges to Federal awards. The charges may be considered a direct cost or an allocated indirect cost, as determined in accordance with the provisions of applicable OMB cost principles circulars, the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) (48 CFR parts 30 and 31), or other applicable cost principles or regulations.

(b) Unallowable costs. A non-Federal entity shall not charge the following to a Federal award:

(1) The cost of any audit under the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501 et seq.) not conducted in accordance with this part.

(2) The cost of auditing a non-Federal entity which has Federal awards expended of less than \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) per year and is thereby exempted under **§\_\_.200(d)** from having an audit conducted under this part. However, this does not prohibit a pass-through entity from charging Federal awards for the cost of limited scope audits to monitor its subrecipients in accordance with **§\_\_.400(d)(3)**, provided the subrecipient does not have a single audit. For purposes of this part, limited scope audits only include agreed-upon procedures engagements conducted in accordance with either the AICPA's generally accepted auditing standards or attestation standards, that are paid for and arranged by a pass-through entity and address only one or more of the following types of compliance requirements: activities allowed or unallowed; allowable costs/cost principles; eligibility; matching, level of effort, earmarking; and, reporting.

**§\_\_.235 Program-specific audits.**

(a) Program-specific audit guide available. In many cases, a program-specific audit guide will be available to provide specific guidance to the auditor with respect to internal control, compliance requirements, suggested audit procedures, and audit reporting requirements. The auditor should contact the Office of Inspector General of the Federal agency to determine whether such a guide is available. When a current program-specific audit guide is available, the auditor shall follow GAGAS and the guide when performing a program-specific audit.

(b) Program-specific audit guide not available. (1) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the auditee and auditor shall have basically the same responsibilities for the Federal program as they would have for an audit of a major program in a single audit.

(2) The auditee shall prepare the financial statement(s) for the Federal program that includes, at a minimum, a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the program and notes that describe the significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule, a summary schedule of prior audit findings consistent with the requirements of **§\_\_.315(b)**, and a corrective action plan consistent with the requirements of **§\_\_.315(c)**.

(3) The auditor shall:

(i) Perform an audit of the financial statement(s) for the Federal program in accordance with GAGAS;

(ii) Obtain an understanding of internal control and perform tests of internal control over the Federal program consistent with the requirements of **§\_\_.500(c)** for a major program;

(iii) Perform procedures to determine whether the auditee has complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program consistent with the requirements of **§\_\_.500(d)** for a major program; and

(iv) Follow up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee, and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding in accordance with the requirements of § \_\_.500(e).

(4) The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) shall state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this part and include the following:

(i) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statement(s) of the Federal program is presented fairly in all material respects in conformity with the stated accounting policies;

(ii) A report on internal control related to the Federal program, which shall describe the scope of testing of internal control and the results of the tests;

(iii) A report on compliance which includes an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the auditee complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements which could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program; and

(iv) A schedule of findings and questioned costs for the Federal program that includes a summary of the auditor's results relative to the Federal program in a format consistent with § \_\_.505(d)(1) and findings and questioned costs consistent with the requirements of § \_\_.505(d)(3).

(c) Report submission for program-specific audits.

(1) The audit shall be completed and the reporting required by paragraph (c)(2) or (c)(3) of this section submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period, unless a longer period is agreed to in advance by the Federal agency that provided the funding or a different period is specified in a program-specific audit guide. (However, for fiscal years beginning on or before June 30, 1998, the audit shall be completed and the required reporting shall be submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or 13 months after the end of the audit period, unless a different period is specified in a program-specific audit guide.) Unless restricted by law or regulation, the auditee shall make report copies available for public inspection.

(2) When a program-specific audit guide is available, the auditee shall submit to the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB the data collection form prepared in accordance with § \_\_.320(b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and the reporting required by the program-specific audit guide to be retained as an archival copy. Also, the auditee shall submit to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity the reporting required by the program-specific audit guide.

(3) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the reporting package for a program-specific audit shall consist of the financial statement(s) of the Federal program, a summary schedule of prior audit findings, and a corrective action plan as described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and the auditor's report(s) described in paragraph (b)(4) of this section. The data collection form prepared in accordance with

§ \_\_.320(b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and one copy of this reporting package shall be submitted to the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB to be retained as an archival copy. Also, when the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed audit findings or the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any audit findings, the auditee shall submit one copy of the reporting package to the Federal clearinghouse on behalf of the Federal awarding agency, or directly to the pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient. Instead of submitting the reporting package to the pass-through entity, when a subrecipient is not required to submit a reporting package to the pass-through entity, the subrecipient shall provide written notification to the pass-through entity, consistent with the requirements of § \_\_.320(e)(2). A subrecipient may submit a copy of the reporting package to the pass-through entity to comply with this notification requirement.

(d) Other sections of this part may apply. Program-specific audits are subject to § \_\_.100 through § \_\_.215(b), § \_\_.220 through § \_\_.230, § \_\_.300 through § \_\_.305, § \_\_.315, § \_\_.320(f) through § \_\_.320(j), § \_\_.400 through § \_\_.405, § \_\_.510 through § \_\_.515, and other referenced provisions of this part unless contrary to the provisions of this section, a program-specific audit guide, or program laws and regulations.

#### **Subpart C--Auditees**

#### **§ \_\_.300 Auditee responsibilities.**

The auditee shall:

(a) Identify, in its accounts, all Federal awards received and expended and the Federal programs under which they were received. Federal program and award identification shall include, as applicable, the CFDA title and number, award number and year, name of the Federal agency, and name of the pass-through entity.

(b) Maintain internal control over Federal programs that provides reasonable assurance that the auditee is managing Federal awards in compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a material effect on each of its Federal programs.

(c) Comply with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements related to each of its Federal programs.

(d) Prepare appropriate financial statements, including the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards in accordance with § \_\_.310.

(e) Ensure that the audits required by this part are properly performed and submitted when due. When extensions to the report submission due date required by § \_\_.320(a) are granted by the cognizant or oversight agency for audit, promptly notify the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB and each pass-through entity providing Federal awards of the extension.

(f) Follow up and take corrective action on audit findings, including preparation of a summary schedule of prior audit findings and a corrective action plan in accordance with § \_\_.315(b) and § \_\_.315(c), respectively.

#### **§ \_\_.305 Auditor selection.**

(a) Auditor procurement. In procuring audit services, auditees shall follow the procurement standards prescribed by the Grants Management Common Rule (hereinafter referred to as the "A-102 Common Rule") published March 11, 1988 and amended April 19, 1995 [insert appropriate CFR citation], Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Non-Profit Organizations," or the FAR (48 CFR part 42), as applicable (OMB Circulars are available from the Office of Administration, Publications Office, room 2200, New Executive Office Building, Washington, DC 20503). Whenever possible, auditees shall make positive efforts to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, in procuring audit services as stated in the A-102 Common Rule, OMB Circular A-110, or the FAR (48 CFR part 42), as applicable. In requesting proposals for audit services, the objectives and scope of the audit should be made clear. Factors to be considered in evaluating each proposal for audit services include the responsiveness to the request for proposal, relevant experience, availability of staff with professional qualifications and technical abilities, the results of external quality control reviews, and price.

(b) Restriction on auditor preparing indirect cost proposals. An auditor who prepares the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan may not also be selected to perform the audit required by this part when the indirect costs recovered by the auditee during the prior year exceeded \$1 million. This restriction applies to the base year used in the preparation of the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan and any subsequent years in which the resulting indirect cost agreement or cost allocation plan is used to recover costs. To minimize any disruption in existing contracts for audit services, this paragraph applies to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1998.

(c) Use of Federal auditors. Federal auditors may perform all or part of the work required under this part if they comply fully with the requirements of this part.

**§ \_\_.310 Financial statements.**

(a) Financial statements. The auditee shall prepare financial statements that reflect its financial position, results of operations or changes in net assets, and, where appropriate, cash flows for the fiscal year audited. The financial statements shall be for the same organizational unit and fiscal year that is chosen to meet the requirements of this part. However, organization-wide financial statements may also include departments, agencies, and other organizational units that have separate audits in accordance with § \_\_.500(a) and prepare separate financial statements.

(b) Schedule of expenditures of Federal awards. The auditee shall also prepare a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the period covered by the auditee's financial statements. While not required, the auditee may choose to provide information requested by Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities to make the schedule easier to use. For example, when a Federal program has multiple award years, the auditee may list the amount of Federal awards expended for each award year separately. At a minimum, the schedule shall:

(1) List individual Federal programs by Federal agency. For Federal programs included in a cluster of programs, list individual Federal programs within a cluster of programs. For R&D, total Federal awards expended shall be shown either by individual award or by Federal agency and major subdivision within the Federal agency. For example, the National Institutes of Health is a major subdivision in the Department of Health and Human Services.

(2) For Federal awards received as a subrecipient, the name of the pass-through entity and identifying number assigned by the pass-through entity shall be included.

(3) Provide total Federal awards expended for each individual Federal program and the CFDA number or other identifying number when the CFDA information is not available.

(4) Include notes that describe the significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule.

(5) To the extent practical, pass-through entities should identify in the schedule the total amount provided to subrecipients from each Federal program.

(6) Include, in either the schedule or a note to the schedule, the value of the Federal awards expended in the form of non-cash assistance, the amount of insurance in effect during the year, and loans or loan guarantees outstanding at year end. While not required, it is preferable to present this information in the schedule.

**§ \_\_.315 Audit findings follow-up.**

(a) General. The auditee is responsible for follow-up and corrective action on all audit findings. As part of this responsibility, the auditee shall prepare a summary schedule of prior audit findings. The auditee shall also prepare a corrective action plan for current year audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings and the corrective action plan shall include the reference numbers the auditor assigns to audit findings under **§ \_\_.510(c)**. Since the summary schedule may include audit findings from multiple years, it shall include the fiscal year in which the finding initially occurred.

(b) Summary schedule of prior audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings shall report the status of all audit findings included in the prior audit's schedule of findings and questioned costs relative to Federal awards. The summary schedule shall also include audit findings reported in the prior audit's summary schedule of prior audit findings except audit findings listed as corrected in accordance with paragraph **(b)(1)** of this section, or no longer valid or not warranting further action in accordance with paragraph **(b)(4)** of this section.

(1) When audit findings were fully corrected, the summary schedule need only list the audit findings and state that corrective action was taken.

(2) When audit findings were not corrected or were only partially corrected, the summary schedule shall describe the planned corrective action as well as any partial corrective action taken.

(3) When corrective action taken is significantly different from corrective action previously reported in a corrective action plan or in the Federal agency's or pass-through entity's management decision, the summary schedule shall provide an explanation.

(4) When the auditee believes the audit findings are no longer valid or do not warrant further action, the reasons for this position shall be described in the summary schedule. A valid reason for considering an audit finding as not warranting further action is that all of the following have occurred:

(i) Two years have passed since the audit report in which

the finding occurred was submitted to the Federal clearinghouse;

(ii) The Federal agency or pass-through entity is not currently following up with the auditee on the audit finding; and

(iii) A management decision was not issued.

(c) Corrective action plan. At the completion of the audit, the auditee shall prepare a corrective action plan to address each audit finding included in the current year auditor's reports. The corrective action plan shall provide the name(s) of the contact person(s) responsible for corrective action, the corrective action planned, and the anticipated completion date. If the auditee does not agree with the audit findings or believes corrective action is not required, then the corrective action plan shall include an explanation and specific reasons.

**§ \_\_.320 Report submission.**

(a) General. The audit shall be completed and the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section shall be submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period, unless a longer period is agreed to in advance by the cognizant or oversight agency for audit. (However, for fiscal years beginning on or before June 30, 1998, the audit shall be completed and the data collection form and reporting package shall be submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or 13 months after the end of the audit period.) Unless restricted by law or regulation, the auditee shall make copies available for public inspection.

(b) Data Collection. (1) The auditee shall submit a data collection form which states whether the audit was completed in accordance with this part and provides information about the auditee, its Federal programs, and the results of the audit. The form shall be approved by OMB, available from the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB, and include data elements similar to those presented in this paragraph. A senior level representative of the auditee (e.g., State controller, director of finance, chief executive officer, or chief financial officer) shall sign a statement to be included as part of the form certifying that: the auditee complied with the requirements of this part, the form was prepared in accordance with this part (and the instructions accompanying the form), and the information included in the form, in its entirety, are accurate and complete.

(2) The data collection form shall include the following data elements:

- (i) The type of report the auditor issued on the financial statements of the auditee (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion).
- (ii) Where applicable, a statement that reportable conditions in internal control were disclosed by the audit of the financial statements and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses.
- (iii) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any noncompliance which is material to the financial statements of the auditee.
- (iv) Where applicable, a statement that reportable conditions in internal control over major programs were disclosed by the audit and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses.
- (v) The type of report the auditor issued on compliance for major

programs (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion).

- (vi) A list of the Federal awarding agencies which will receive a copy of the reporting package pursuant to § \_\_\_\_.320(d)(2) of OMB Circular A-133.
- (vii) A yes or no statement as to whether the auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee under § \_\_\_\_.530 of OMB Circular A-133.
- (viii) The dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs as defined in § \_\_\_\_.520(b) of OMB Circular A-133.
- (ix) The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number for each Federal program, as applicable.
- (x) The name of each Federal program and identification of each major program. Individual programs within a cluster of programs should be listed in the same level of detail as they are listed in the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards.
- (xi) The amount of expenditures in the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards associated with each Federal program.
- (xii) For each Federal program, a yes or no statement as to whether there are audit findings in each of the following types of compliance requirements and the total amount of any questioned costs:
  - (A) Activities allowed or unallowed.
  - (B) Allowable costs/cost principles.
  - (C) Cash management.
  - (D) Davis-Bacon Act.
  - (E) Eligibility.
  - (F) Equipment and real property management.
  - (G) Matching, level of effort, earmarking.
  - (H) Period of availability of Federal funds.
  - (I) Procurement and suspension and debarment.
  - (J) Program income.
  - (K) Real property acquisition and relocation assistance.
  - (L) Reporting.
  - (M) Subrecipient monitoring.
  - (N) Special tests and provisions.
- (xiii) Auditee Name, Employer Identification Number(s), Name and Title of Certifying Official, Telephone Number, Signature, and Date.
- (xiv) Auditor Name, Name and Title of Contact Person, Auditor Address, Auditor Telephone Number, Signature, and Date.
- (xv) Whether the auditee has either a cognizant or oversight agency for audit.
- (xvi) The name of the cognizant or oversight agency for audit determined in accordance with § \_\_\_\_.400(a) and § \_\_\_\_.400(b), respectively.

(3) Using the information included in the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, the auditor shall complete the applicable sections of the form. The auditor shall sign a statement to be included as part of the data collection form that indicates, at a minimum, the source of the information included in the form, the auditor's responsibility for the information, that the form is not a substitute for the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, and that the content of

the form is limited to the data elements prescribed by OMB.

(c) Reporting package. The reporting package shall include the:

- (1) Financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards discussed in § \_\_\_\_.310(a) and § \_\_\_\_.310(b), respectively;
- (2) Summary schedule of prior audit findings discussed in § \_\_\_\_.315(b);
- (3) Auditor's report(s) discussed in § \_\_\_\_.505; and
- (4) Corrective action plan discussed in § \_\_\_\_.315(c).

(d) Submission to clearinghouse. All auditees shall submit to the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section for:

(1) The Federal clearinghouse to retain as an archival copy;  
and

(2) Each Federal awarding agency when the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed audit findings relating to Federal awards that the Federal awarding agency provided directly or the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any audit findings relating to Federal awards that the Federal awarding agency provided directly.

(e) Additional submission by subrecipients. (1) In addition to the requirements discussed in paragraph (d) of this section, auditees that are also subrecipients shall submit to each pass-through entity one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section for each pass-through entity when the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed audit findings relating to Federal awards that the pass-through entity provided or the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any audit findings relating to Federal awards that the pass-through entity provided.

(2) Instead of submitting the reporting package to a pass-through entity, when a subrecipient is not required to submit a reporting package to a pass-through entity pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section, the subrecipient shall provide written notification to the pass-through entity that: an audit of the subrecipient was conducted in accordance with this part (including the period covered by the audit and the name, amount, and CFDA number of the Federal award(s) provided by the pass-through entity); the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed no audit findings relating to the Federal award(s) that the pass-through entity provided; and, the summary schedule of prior audit findings did not report on the status of any audit findings relating to the Federal award(s) that the pass-through entity provided. A subrecipient may submit a copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section to a pass-through entity to comply with this notification requirement.

(f) Requests for report copies. In response to requests by a Federal agency or pass-through entity, auditees shall submit the appropriate copies of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section and, if requested, a copy of any management letters issued by the auditor.

(g) Report retention requirements. Auditees shall keep one copy of the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section on file for three years from the date of submission to the Federal clearinghouse

designated by OMB. Pass-through entities shall keep subrecipients' submissions on file for three years from date of receipt.

(h) Clearinghouse responsibilities. The Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB shall distribute the reporting packages received in accordance with paragraph (d) (2) of this section and § \_\_\_\_ .235 (c) (3) to applicable Federal awarding agencies, maintain a data base of completed audits, provide appropriate information to Federal agencies, and follow up with known auditees which have not submitted the required data collection forms and reporting packages.

(i) Clearinghouse address. The address of the Federal clearinghouse currently designated by OMB is Federal Audit Clearinghouse, Bureau of the Census, 1201 E. 10th Street, Jeffersonville, IN 47132.

(j) Electronic filing. Nothing in this part shall preclude electronic submissions to the Federal clearinghouse in such manner as may be approved by OMB. With OMB approval, the Federal clearinghouse may pilot test methods of electronic submissions.

**Subpart D--Federal Agencies and Pass-Through Entities**  
**§ \_\_\_\_ .400 Responsibilities.**

(a) Cognizant agency for audit responsibilities. Recipients expending more than \$25 million (*\$50 million for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) a year in Federal awards shall have a cognizant agency for audit. The designated cognizant agency for audit shall be the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of direct funding to a recipient unless OMB makes a specific cognizant agency for audit assignment.

*Following is effective for fiscal years ending on or before December 31, 2003:* To provide for continuity of cognizance, the determination of the predominant amount of direct funding shall be based upon direct Federal awards expended in the recipient's fiscal years ending in 1995, 2000, 2005, and every fifth year thereafter. For example, audit cognizance for periods ending in 1997 through 2000 will be determined based on Federal awards expended in 1995. (However, for States and local governments that expend more than \$25 million a year in Federal awards and have previously assigned cognizant agencies for audit, the requirements of this paragraph are not effective until fiscal years beginning after June 30, 2000.)

*Following is effective for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003:* The determination of the predominant amount of direct funding shall be based upon direct Federal awards expended in the recipient's fiscal years ending in 2004, 2009, 2014, and every fifth year thereafter. For example, audit cognizance for periods ending in 2006 through 2010 will be determined based on Federal awards expended in 2004. (However, for 2001 through 2005, the cognizant agency for audit is determined based on the predominant amount of direct Federal awards expended in the recipient's fiscal year ending in 2000).

Notwithstanding the manner in which audit cognizance is determined, a Federal awarding agency with cognizance for an auditee may reassign cognizance to another Federal awarding agency which provides substantial direct funding and agrees to be the cognizant agency for audit. Within 30 days after any reassignment, both the old and the new cognizant agency for audit shall notify the auditee, and, if known, the auditor of the reassignment. The cognizant agency for audit shall:

(1) Provide technical audit advice and liaison to auditees and auditors.

(2) Consider auditee requests for extensions to the report

submission due date required by § \_\_.320(a). The cognizant agency for audit may grant extensions for good cause.

(3) Obtain or conduct quality control reviews of selected audits made by non-Federal auditors, and provide the results, when appropriate, to other interested organizations.

(4) Promptly inform other affected Federal agencies and appropriate Federal law enforcement officials of any direct reporting by the auditee or its auditor of irregularities or illegal acts, as required by GAGAS or laws and regulations.

(5) Advise the auditor and, where appropriate, the auditee of any deficiencies found in the audits when the deficiencies require corrective action by the auditor. When advised of deficiencies, the auditee shall work with the auditor to take corrective action. If corrective action is not taken, the cognizant agency for audit shall notify the auditor, the auditee, and applicable Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities of the facts and make recommendations for follow-up action. Major inadequacies or repetitive substandard performance by auditors shall be referred to appropriate State licensing agencies and professional bodies for disciplinary action.

(6) Coordinate, to the extent practical, audits or reviews made by or for Federal agencies that are in addition to the audits made pursuant to this part, so that the additional audits or reviews build upon audits performed in accordance with this part.

(7) Coordinate a management decision for audit findings that affect the Federal programs of more than one agency.

(8) Coordinate the audit work and reporting responsibilities among auditors to achieve the most cost-effective audit.

(9) For biennial audits permitted under § \_\_.220, consider auditee requests to qualify as a low-risk auditee under § \_\_.530(a).

(b) Oversight agency for audit responsibilities. An auditee which does not have a designated cognizant agency for audit will be under the general oversight of the Federal agency determined in accordance with § \_\_.105. The oversight agency for audit:

(1) Shall provide technical advice to auditees and auditors as requested.

(2) May assume all or some of the responsibilities normally performed by a cognizant agency for audit.

(c) Federal awarding agency responsibilities. The Federal awarding agency shall perform the following for the Federal awards it makes:

(1) Identify Federal awards made by informing each recipient of the CFDA title and number, award name and number, award year, and if the award is for R&D. When some of this information is not available, the Federal agency shall provide information necessary to clearly describe the Federal award.

(2) Advise recipients of requirements imposed on them by Federal laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements.

(3) Ensure that audits are completed and reports are received

in a timely manner and in accordance with the requirements of this part.

(4) Provide technical advice and counsel to auditees and auditors as requested.

(5) Issue a management decision on audit findings within six months after receipt of the audit report and ensure that the recipient takes appropriate and timely corrective action.

(6) Assign a person responsible for providing annual updates of the compliance supplement to OMB.

(d) Pass-through entity responsibilities. A pass-through entity shall perform the following for the Federal awards it makes:

(1) Identify Federal awards made by informing each subrecipient of CFDA title and number, award name and number, award year, if the award is R&D, and name of Federal agency. When some of this information is not available, the pass-through entity shall provide the best information available to describe the Federal award.

(2) Advise subrecipients of requirements imposed on them by Federal laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements as well as any supplemental requirements imposed by the pass-through entity.

(3) Monitor the activities of subrecipients as necessary to ensure that Federal awards are used for authorized purposes in compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements and that performance goals are achieved.

(4) Ensure that subrecipients expending \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) or more in Federal awards during the subrecipient's fiscal year have met the audit requirements of this part for that fiscal year.

(5) Issue a management decision on audit findings within six months after receipt of the subrecipient's audit report and ensure that the subrecipient takes appropriate and timely corrective action.

(6) Consider whether subrecipient audits necessitate adjustment of the pass-through entity's own records.

(7) Require each subrecipient to permit the pass-through entity and auditors to have access to the records and financial statements as necessary for the pass-through entity to comply with this part.

**§ \_\_.405 Management decision.**

(a) General. The management decision shall clearly state whether or not the audit finding is sustained, the reasons for the decision, and the expected auditee action to repay disallowed costs, make financial adjustments, or take other action. If the auditee has not completed corrective action, a timetable for follow-up should be given. Prior to issuing the management decision, the Federal agency or pass-through entity may request additional information or documentation from the auditee, including a request for auditor assurance related to the documentation, as a way of mitigating disallowed costs. The management decision should describe any appeal process available to the auditee.

(b) Federal agency. As provided in § \_\_.400 (a) (7), the cognizant agency for audit shall be responsible for coordinating a management decision for audit findings that affect the programs of more than one Federal agency.

As provided in §     .400(c)(5), a Federal awarding agency is responsible for issuing a management decision for findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to recipients. Alternate arrangements may be made on a case-by-case basis by agreement among the Federal agencies concerned.

(c) Pass-through entity. As provided in §     .400(d)(5), the pass-through entity shall be responsible for making the management decision for audit findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to subrecipients.

(d) Time requirements. The entity responsible for making the management decision shall do so within six months of receipt of the audit report. Corrective action should be initiated within six months after receipt of the audit report and proceed as rapidly as possible.

(e) Reference numbers. Management decisions shall include the reference numbers the auditor assigned to each audit finding in accordance with §     .510(c).

#### **Subpart E--Auditors**

##### **§     .500     Scope of audit.**

(a) General. The audit shall be conducted in accordance with GAGAS. The audit shall cover the entire operations of the auditee; or, at the option of the auditee, such audit shall include a series of audits that cover departments, agencies, and other organizational units which expended or otherwise administered Federal awards during such fiscal year, provided that each such audit shall encompass the financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for each such department, agency, and other organizational unit, which shall be considered to be a non-Federal entity. The financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards shall be for the same fiscal year.

(b) Financial statements. The auditor shall determine whether the financial statements of the auditee are presented fairly in all material respects in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor shall also determine whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is presented fairly in all material respects in relation to the auditee's financial statements taken as a whole.

(c) Internal control. (1) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor shall perform procedures to obtain an understanding of internal control over Federal programs sufficient to plan the audit to support a low assessed level of control risk for major programs.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(3) of this section, the auditor shall:

(i) Plan the testing of internal control over major programs to support a low assessed level of control risk for the assertions relevant to the compliance requirements for each major program; and

(ii) Perform testing of internal control as planned in paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section.

(3) When internal control over some or all of the compliance requirements for a major program are likely to be ineffective in preventing or detecting noncompliance, the planning and performing of testing described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section are not required for those compliance requirements. However, the auditor shall report a reportable condition (including whether any such condition is a material weakness) in accordance with §     .510, assess the related control risk at the maximum, and consider whether additional compliance tests are required because of ineffective

internal control.

(d) Compliance. (1) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor shall determine whether the auditee has complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that may have a direct and material effect on each of its major programs.

(2) The principal compliance requirements applicable to most Federal programs and the compliance requirements of the largest Federal programs are included in the compliance supplement.

(3) For the compliance requirements related to Federal programs contained in the compliance supplement, an audit of these compliance requirements will meet the requirements of this part. Where there have been changes to the compliance requirements and the changes are not reflected in the compliance supplement, the auditor shall determine the current compliance requirements and modify the audit procedures accordingly. For those Federal programs not covered in the compliance supplement, the auditor should use the types of compliance requirements contained in the compliance supplement as guidance for identifying the types of compliance requirements to test, and determine the requirements governing the Federal program by reviewing the provisions of contracts and grant agreements and the laws and regulations referred to in such contracts and grant agreements.

(4) The compliance testing shall include tests of transactions and such other auditing procedures necessary to provide the auditor sufficient evidence to support an opinion on compliance.

(e) Audit follow-up. The auditor shall follow-up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § \_\_.315(b), and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding. The auditor shall perform audit follow-up procedures regardless of whether a prior audit finding relates to a major program in the current year.

(f) Data Collection Form. As required in § \_\_.320(b)(3), the auditor shall complete and sign specified sections of the data collection form.

**§ \_\_.505     Audit reporting.**

The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) shall state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this part and include the following:

(a) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statements are presented fairly in all material respects in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is presented fairly in all material respects in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole.

(b) A report on internal control related to the financial statements and major programs. This report shall describe the scope of testing of internal control and the results of the tests, and, where applicable, refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) A report on compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a

material effect on the financial statements. This report shall also include an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the auditee complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements which could have a direct and material effect on each major program, and, where applicable, refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(d) A schedule of findings and questioned costs which shall include the following three components:

(1) A summary of the auditor's results which shall include:

(i) The type of report the auditor issued on the financial statements of the auditee (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(ii) Where applicable, a statement that reportable conditions in internal control were disclosed by the audit of the financial statements and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses;

(iii) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any noncompliance which is material to the financial statements of the auditee;

(iv) Where applicable, a statement that reportable conditions in internal control over major programs were disclosed by the audit and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses;

(v) The type of report the auditor issued on compliance for major programs (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(vi) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any audit findings which the auditor is required to report under § \_\_.510 (a);

(vii) An identification of major programs;

(viii) The dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs, as described in § \_\_.520 (b); and

(ix) A statement as to whether the auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee under § \_\_.530.

(2) Findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(3) Findings and questioned costs for Federal awards which shall include audit findings as defined in § \_\_.510 (a).

(i) Audit findings (e.g., internal control findings, compliance findings, questioned costs, or fraud) which relate to the same issue should be presented as a single audit finding. Where practical, audit findings should be organized by Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(ii) Audit findings which relate to both the financial statements and Federal awards, as reported under paragraphs (d) (2) and (d) (3) of this section, respectively, should be reported in both sections of the schedule. However, the reporting in one section of the schedule may be in summary form with a reference to a detailed reporting in the other section of the schedule.

§ \_\_.510 **Audit findings.**

(a) Audit findings reported. The auditor shall report the following as audit findings in a schedule of findings and questioned costs:

(1) Reportable conditions in internal control over major programs. The auditor's determination of whether a deficiency in internal control is a reportable condition for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program or an audit objective identified in the compliance supplement. The auditor shall identify reportable conditions which are individually or cumulatively material weaknesses.

(2) Material noncompliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements related to a major program. The auditor's determination of whether a noncompliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements is material for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program or an audit objective identified in the compliance supplement.

(3) Known questioned costs which are greater than \$10,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. Known questioned costs are those specifically identified by the auditor. In evaluating the effect of questioned costs on the opinion on compliance, the auditor considers the best estimate of total costs questioned (likely questioned costs), not just the questioned costs specifically identified (known questioned costs). The auditor shall also report known questioned costs when likely questioned costs are greater than \$10,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. In reporting questioned costs, the auditor shall include information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the questioned costs.

(4) Known questioned costs which are greater than \$10,000 for a Federal program which is not audited as a major program. Except for audit follow-up, the auditor is not required under this part to perform audit procedures for such a Federal program; therefore, the auditor will normally not find questioned costs for a program which is not audited as a major program. However, if the auditor does become aware of questioned costs for a Federal program which is not audited as a major program (e.g., as part of audit follow-up or other audit procedures) and the known questioned costs are greater than \$10,000, then the auditor shall report this as an audit finding.

(5) The circumstances concerning why the auditor's report on compliance for major programs is other than an unqualified opinion, unless such circumstances are otherwise reported as audit findings in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards.

(6) Known fraud affecting a Federal award, unless such fraud is otherwise reported as an audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards. This paragraph does not require the auditor to make an additional reporting when the auditor confirms that the fraud was reported outside of the auditor's reports under the direct reporting requirements of GAGAS.

(7) Instances where the results of audit follow-up procedures disclosed that the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § \_\_\_.315(b) materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding.

(b) Audit finding detail. Audit findings shall be presented in sufficient detail for the auditee to prepare a corrective action plan and take corrective action and for Federal agencies and pass-through entities to arrive at a management decision. The following specific information shall be

included, as applicable, in audit findings:

(1) Federal program and specific Federal award identification including the CFDA title and number, Federal award number and year, name of Federal agency, and name of the applicable pass-through entity. When information, such as the CFDA title and number or Federal award number, is not available, the auditor shall provide the best information available to describe the Federal award.

(2) The criteria or specific requirement upon which the audit finding is based, including statutory, regulatory, or other citation.

(3) The condition found, including facts that support the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(4) Identification of questioned costs and how they were computed.

(5) Information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the audit findings, such as whether the audit findings represent an isolated instance or a systemic problem. Where appropriate, instances identified shall be related to the universe and the number of cases examined and be quantified in terms of dollar value.

(6) The possible asserted effect to provide sufficient information to the auditee and Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, to permit them to determine the cause and effect to facilitate prompt and proper corrective action.

(7) Recommendations to prevent future occurrences of the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(8) Views of responsible officials of the auditee when there is disagreement with the audit findings, to the extent practical.

(c) Reference numbers. Each audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs shall include a reference number to allow for easy referencing of the audit findings during follow-up.

**§ \_\_.515 Audit working papers.**

(a) Retention of working papers. The auditor shall retain working papers and reports for a minimum of three years after the date of issuance of the auditor's report(s) to the auditee, unless the auditor is notified in writing by the cognizant agency for audit, oversight agency for audit, or pass-through entity to extend the retention period. When the auditor is aware that the Federal awarding agency, pass-through entity, or auditee is contesting an audit finding, the auditor shall contact the parties contesting the audit finding for guidance prior to destruction of the working papers and reports.

(b) Access to working papers. Audit working papers shall be made available upon request to the cognizant or oversight agency for audit or its designee, a Federal agency providing direct or indirect funding, or GAO at the completion of the audit, as part of a quality review, to resolve audit findings, or to carry out oversight responsibilities consistent with the purposes of this part. Access to working papers includes the right of Federal agencies to obtain copies of working papers, as is reasonable and necessary.

**§ \_\_.520 Major program determination.**

(a) General. The auditor shall use a risk-based approach to determine which Federal programs are major programs. This risk-based approach shall include consideration of: Current and prior audit experience, oversight by Federal agencies and pass-through entities, and the inherent risk of the Federal program. The process in paragraphs (b) through (i) of this section shall be followed.

(b) Step 1. (1) The auditor shall identify the larger Federal programs, which shall be labeled Type A programs. Type A programs are defined as Federal programs with Federal awards expended during the audit period exceeding the larger of:

(i) \$300,000 or three percent (.03) of total Federal awards expended in the case of an auditee for which total Federal awards expended equal or exceed \$300,000 but are less than or equal to \$100 million.

(ii) \$3 million or three-tenths of one percent (.003) of total Federal awards expended in the case of an auditee for which total Federal awards expended exceed \$100 million but are less than or equal to \$10 billion.

(iii) \$30 million or 15 hundredths of one percent (.0015) of total Federal awards expended in the case of an auditee for which total Federal awards expended exceed \$10 billion.

(2) Federal programs not labeled Type A under paragraph (b) (1) of this section shall be labeled Type B programs.

(3) The inclusion of large loan and loan guarantees (loans) should not result in the exclusion of other programs as Type A programs. When a Federal program providing loans significantly affects the number or size of Type A programs, the auditor shall consider this Federal program as a Type A program and exclude its values in determining other Type A programs.

(4) For biennial audits permitted under § \_\_.220, the determination of Type A and Type B programs shall be based upon the Federal awards expended during the two-year period.

(c) Step 2. (1) The auditor shall identify Type A programs which are low-risk. For a Type A program to be considered low-risk, it shall have been audited as a major program in at least one of the two most recent audit periods (in the most recent audit period in the case of a biennial audit), and, in the most recent audit period, it shall have had no audit findings under § \_\_.510(a). However, the auditor may use judgment and consider that audit findings from questioned costs under § \_\_.510(a)(3) and § \_\_.510(a)(4), fraud under § \_\_.510(a)(6), and audit follow-up for the summary schedule of prior audit findings under § \_\_.510(a)(7) do not preclude the Type A program from being low-risk. The auditor shall consider: the criteria in § \_\_.525(c), § \_\_.525(d)(1), § \_\_.525(d)(2), and § \_\_.525(d)(3); the results of audit follow-up; whether any changes in personnel or systems affecting a Type A program have significantly increased risk; and apply professional judgment in determining whether a Type A program is low-risk.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (c) (1) of this section, OMB may approve a Federal awarding agency's request that a Type A program at certain recipients may not be considered low-risk. For example, it may be necessary for a large Type A program to be audited as major each year at particular recipients to allow the Federal agency to comply with the Government Management Reform Act of 1994 (31 U.S.C. 3515). The Federal agency shall notify the recipient and, if known, the auditor at least 180 days prior to the

end of the fiscal year to be audited of OMB's approval.

(d) Step 3. (1) The auditor shall identify Type B programs which are high-risk using professional judgment and the criteria in § .525. However, should the auditor select Option 2 under Step 4 (paragraph (e)(2)(i)(B) of this section), the auditor is not required to identify more high-risk Type B programs than the number of low-risk Type A programs. Except for known reportable conditions in internal control or compliance problems as discussed in § .525(b)(1), § .525(b)(2), and § .525(c)(1), a single criteria in § .525 would seldom cause a Type B program to be considered high-risk.

(2) The auditor is not expected to perform risk assessments on relatively small Federal programs. Therefore, the auditor is only required to perform risk assessments on Type B programs that exceed the larger of:

(i) \$100,000 or three-tenths of one percent (.003) of total Federal awards expended when the auditee has less than or equal to \$100 million in total Federal awards expended.

(ii) \$300,000 or three-hundredths of one percent (.0003) of total Federal awards expended when the auditee has more than \$100 million in total Federal awards expended.

(e) Step 4. At a minimum, the auditor shall audit all of the following as major programs:

(1) All Type A programs, except the auditor may exclude any Type A programs identified as low-risk under Step 2 (paragraph (c)(1) of this section).

(2) (i) High-risk Type B programs as identified under either of the following two options:

(A) Option 1. At least one half of the Type B programs identified as high-risk under Step 3 (paragraph (d) of this section), except this paragraph (e)(2)(i)(A) does not require the auditor to audit more high-risk Type B programs than the number of low-risk Type A programs identified as low-risk under Step 2.

(B) Option 2. One high-risk Type B program for each Type A program identified as low-risk under Step 2.

(ii) When identifying which high-risk Type B programs to audit as major under either Option 1 or 2 in paragraph (e)(2)(i)(A) or (B), the auditor is encouraged to use an approach which provides an opportunity for different high-risk Type B programs to be audited as major over a period of time.

(3) Such additional programs as may be necessary to comply with the percentage of coverage rule discussed in paragraph (f) of this section. This paragraph (e)(3) may require the auditor to audit more programs as major than the number of Type A programs.

(f) Percentage of coverage rule. The auditor shall audit as major programs Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in the aggregate, encompass at least 50 percent of total Federal awards expended. If the auditee meets the criteria in § .530 for a low-risk auditee, the auditor need only audit as major programs Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in the aggregate, encompass at least 25 percent of total Federal awards expended.

(g) Documentation of risk. The auditor shall document in the working

papers the risk analysis process used in determining major programs.

(h) Auditor's judgment. When the major program determination was performed and documented in accordance with this part, the auditor's judgment in applying the risk-based approach to determine major programs shall be presumed correct. Challenges by Federal agencies and pass-through entities shall only be for clearly improper use of the guidance in this part. However, Federal agencies and pass-through entities may provide auditors guidance about the risk of a particular Federal program and the auditor shall consider this guidance in determining major programs in audits not yet completed.

(i) Deviation from use of risk criteria. For first-year audits, the auditor may elect to determine major programs as all Type A programs plus any Type B programs as necessary to meet the percentage of coverage rule discussed in paragraph (f) of this section. Under this option, the auditor would not be required to perform the procedures discussed in paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) of this section.

(1) A first-year audit is the first year the entity is audited under this part or the first year of a change of auditors.

(2) To ensure that a frequent change of auditors would not preclude audit of high-risk Type B programs, this election for first-year audits may not be used by an auditee more than once in every three years.

**§ \_\_.525 Criteria for Federal program risk.**

(a) General. The auditor's determination should be based on an overall evaluation of the risk of noncompliance occurring which could be material to the Federal program. The auditor shall use auditor judgment and consider criteria, such as described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, to identify risk in Federal programs. Also, as part of the risk analysis, the auditor may wish to discuss a particular Federal program with auditee management and the Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(b) Current and prior audit experience. (1) Weaknesses in internal control over Federal programs would indicate higher risk. Consideration should be given to the control environment over Federal programs and such factors as the expectation of management's adherence to applicable laws and regulations and the provisions of contracts and grant agreements and the competence and experience of personnel who administer the Federal programs.

(i) A Federal program administered under multiple internal control structures may have higher risk. When assessing risk in a large single audit, the auditor shall consider whether weaknesses are isolated in a single operating unit (e.g., one college campus) or pervasive throughout the entity.

(ii) When significant parts of a Federal program are passed through to subrecipients, a weak system for monitoring subrecipients would indicate higher risk.

(iii) The extent to which computer processing is used to administer Federal programs, as well as the complexity of that processing, should be considered by the auditor in assessing risk. New and recently modified computer systems may also indicate risk.

(2) Prior audit findings would indicate higher risk, particularly when the situations identified in the audit findings could have a significant impact on a Federal program or have not been corrected.

(3) Federal programs not recently audited as major programs

may be of higher risk than Federal programs recently audited as major programs without audit findings.

(c) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies and pass-through entities.

(1) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies or pass-through entities could indicate risk. For example, recent monitoring or other reviews performed by an oversight entity which disclosed no significant problems would indicate lower risk. However, monitoring which disclosed significant problems would indicate higher risk.

(2) Federal agencies, with the concurrence of OMB, may identify Federal programs which are higher risk. OMB plans to provide this identification in the compliance supplement.

(d) Inherent risk of the Federal program. (1) The nature of a Federal program may indicate risk. Consideration should be given to the complexity of the program and the extent to which the Federal program contracts for goods and services. For example, Federal programs that disburse funds through third party contracts or have eligibility criteria may be of higher risk. Federal programs primarily involving staff payroll costs may have a high-risk for time and effort reporting, but otherwise be at low-risk.

(2) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the Federal agency may indicate risk. For example, a new Federal program with new or interim regulations may have higher risk than an established program with time-tested regulations. Also, significant changes in Federal programs, laws, regulations, or the provisions of contracts or grant agreements may increase risk.

(3) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the auditee may indicate risk. For example, during the first and last years that an auditee participates in a Federal program, the risk may be higher due to start-up or closeout of program activities and staff.

(4) Type B programs with larger Federal awards expended would be of higher risk than programs with substantially smaller Federal awards expended.

**§ \_\_.530 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.**

An auditee which meets all of the following conditions for each of the preceding two years (or, in the case of biennial audits, preceding two audit periods) shall qualify as a low-risk auditee and be eligible for reduced audit coverage in accordance with § \_\_.520:

(a) Single audits were performed on an annual basis in accordance with the provisions of this part. A non-Federal entity that has biennial audits does not qualify as a low-risk auditee, unless agreed to in advance by the cognizant or oversight agency for audit.

(b) The auditor's opinions on the financial statements and the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards were unqualified. However, the cognizant or oversight agency for audit may judge that an opinion qualification does not affect the management of Federal awards and provide a waiver.

(c) There were no deficiencies in internal control which were identified as material weaknesses under the requirements of GAGAS. However, the cognizant or oversight agency for audit may judge that any identified material weaknesses do not affect the management of Federal awards and provide a waiver.

(d) None of the Federal programs had audit findings from any of the following in either of the preceding two years (or, in the case of biennial audits, preceding two audit periods) in which they were classified as Type A programs:

(1) Internal control deficiencies which were identified as material weaknesses;

(2) Noncompliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements which have a material effect on the Type A program; or

(3) Known or likely questioned costs that exceed five percent of the total Federal awards expended for a Type A program during the year.

Appendix A to Part \_\_\_ - Data Collection Form (Form SF-SAC)  
[insert SF-SAC after finalized]

Appendix B to Part \_\_\_ - Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement

Note: Provisional OMB Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement is available from the Office of Administration, Publications Office, room 2200, New Executive Office Building, Washington, DC 20503.

**Forest Service**

*Title:* The Role of Local Communities in the Development of Agreement or Contract Plans through Stewardship Contracting.

*OMB Control Number:* 0596-0201.

*Summary of Collection:* Section 323 of Public Law 108-7 (16 U.S.C. 2104 Note) requires the Forest Service (FS) and Bureau of Land Management (BLM) to report to Congress annually on the role of local communities in the development of agreement or contract plans through stewardship contracting. To meet that requirement FS conducts an annual telephone survey to gather the necessary information for use by both the FS and BLM in developing their separate annual reports to Congress.

*Need and Use of the Information:* The survey will collect information on the role of local communities in the development of agreement or contract plans through stewardship contracting. The survey will provide information regarding the nature of the local community involved in developing agreement or contract plans, the nature of roles played by the entities involved in developing agreement or contract plans, the benefits to the community and agency by being involved in planning and development of contract plans, and the usefulness of stewardship contracting in helping meet the needs of local communities. FS posts the report on its Web page for viewing by the public. Congress also makes the agency reports available for use by organizations both inside and outside the government.

*Description of Respondents:* Individuals or households; business or other for-profit; not-for-profit institutions; Federal Government; State, Local or Tribal Government.

*Number of Respondents:* 507.

*Frequency of Responses:* Reporting: Annually.

*Total Burden Hours:* 380.

**Charlene Parker,**

*Departmental Information Collection Clearance Officer.*

[FR Doc. 2012-30258 Filed 12-14-12; 8:45 am]

**BILLING CODE 3410-11-P**

**DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE****Forest Service**

**Okanogan-Wenatchee National Forest, Okanogan County, WA Bannan, Aeneas, Revis, and Tunk Grazing Allotments Environmental Impact Statement; Correction**

**AGENCY:** Forest Service, USDA.

**ACTION:** Notice; Correction.

**SUMMARY:** The USDA Forest Service published a document in the **Federal Register** of November 27, 2012, concerning requests for comments on the proposed grazing allotments and dates of document availability. The document contained incorrect dates.

**FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:** Christina Bauman, 509-486-5112.

**Correction**

In the **Federal Register** of November 27, 2012, in FR Doc. 2012-28420, on page 70137, in the second column, correct the

**DATES** caption to read:

**DATES:** Comments concerning the scope of the analysis should be received by January 18, 2013. The draft environmental impact statement is expected to be filed with the Environmental Protection Agency and made available for public review in February 2013. The final environmental impact statement is expected to be available for review in April 2013.

Dated: December 11, 2012.

**Clinton Kyhl,**

*Deputy Forest Supervisor.*

[FR Doc. 2012-30311 Filed 12-14-12; 8:45 am]

**BILLING CODE 3410-75-P**

**DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE**

**[Docket No.: 121115633-2633-01]**

**Department of Commerce Pre-Award Notification Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements**

**AGENCY:** Department of Commerce (DOC).

**ACTION:** Notice.

**SUMMARY:** This notice revises and updates the *Department of Commerce (DOC) Pre-Award Notification Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements*, as published in the **Federal Register** (66 FR 49917) on October 1, 2001, and as amended on October 30, 2002 (67 FR 66109), on December 30, 2004 (69 FR 78389), and February 11, 2008 (73 FR 7696). This announcement constitutes a recompilation of the Department of Commerce pre-award requirements for grants and cooperative agreements, including all amendments and revisions to date.

**DATES:** These provisions are effective December 17, 2012.

**FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:** Gary Johnson, Department of Commerce Office of Acquisition Management, Telephone Number: 202-482-1679.

**SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:** The DOC is authorized to award grants and

cooperative agreements under a wide range of programs that support economic development; international trade; minority businesses; standards and technology; oceanic/atmospheric services; and telecommunications and information.

It is the policy of the DOC to seek full and open competition for awards of discretionary financial assistance funds whenever possible. Moreover, DOC financial assistance must be awarded through a merit-based review and selection process. Notices announcing the availability of Federal funds for new awards for each DOC competitive financial assistance program will be posted on [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov) by the sponsoring operating unit in the uniform format for an announcement of Federal Funding Opportunity (FFO) published by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB). In limited circumstances (e.g., when required by statute), DOC will also publish notices in the **Federal Register** announcing the availability of Federal funds for new awards. These announcements will reference or include the DOC Pre-Award Notification Requirements identified in Sections A and B of this notice, and the program-specific information identified in Section C of this notice, and will follow the uniform format for announcements of funding opportunities as identified in Section D.

This announcement provides notice of the DOC Pre-Award Notification Requirements that apply to all DOC-sponsored grant and cooperative agreement programs, and that may supplement those program announcements that reference this notice. Some of the DOC general provisions published herein contain, by reference or substance, a summary of the pertinent statutes or regulations published in the U.S. Code (U.S.C.), **Federal Register**, or Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), or requirements provided in Executive Orders, OMB Circulars (circulars), or Assurances (Forms SF-424B and SF-424D). This notice does not intend to be a derogation of, or amend, any statute, regulation, Executive Order, circular, or Standard Form.

Each individual award notice will complete and include the relevant analyses pursuant to the requirements in Executive Order 12866, Executive Order 13132, the Administrative Procedure Act, the Regulatory Flexibility Act, and the Paperwork Reduction Act, as applicable.

A. The following pre-award notice provisions apply to all applicants for and recipients of DOC grants and cooperative agreements:

1. Federal Policies and Procedures. Applicants, recipients and subrecipients are subject to all Federal laws and Federal and DOC policies, regulations, and procedures applicable to Federal financial assistance.

2. Debarment, Suspension, Drug-Free Workplace, and Lobbying Provisions. All applicants must comply with the requirements of subpart C of 2 CFR part 1326, "Nonprocurement Debarment and Suspension," 15 CFR part 29, "Governmentwide Requirements for Drug-Free Workplace (Financial Assistance)" and 15 CFR part 28, "New Restrictions on Lobbying," including the submission of required forms and obtaining certification from lower tier applicants and bidders.

3. Pre-Award Screening of Applicant's and Recipient's Management Capabilities, Financial Condition, and Present Responsibility. It is the policy of the DOC to make awards to applicants and recipients that are competently managed, responsible, financially capable and committed to achieving the objectives of the award(s) they receive. Therefore, pre-award screening may include, but is not limited to, the following reviews:

(a) *Past Performance*. Unsatisfactory performance under prior Federal awards may result in an application not being considered for funding.

(b) *Credit Checks*. A credit check will be performed on individuals, for-profit, and non-profit organizations.

(c) *Delinquent Federal Debts*. No award of Federal funds shall be made to an applicant that has an outstanding delinquent Federal debt until:

(1) The delinquent account is paid in full;

(2) A negotiated repayment schedule is established and at least one payment is received; or

(3) Other arrangements satisfactory to the DOC are made.

Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 720B and 31 CFR 901.6, unless waived, the DOC is not permitted to extend financial assistance in the form of a loan, loan guarantee, or loan insurance to any person delinquent on a nontax debt owed to a Federal agency. This prohibition does not apply to disaster loans.

Pursuant to 28 U.S.C. 3201(e), a debtor who has a judgment lien against the debtor's property for a debt to the United States shall not be eligible to receive any grant or loan which is made, insured, guaranteed, or financed directly or indirectly by the United States or to receive funds directly from the Federal Government in any program, except funds to which the debtor is entitled as beneficiary, until the

judgment is paid in full or otherwise satisfied. The DOC sponsoring operating units may promulgate regulations to allow for waiver of this restriction on eligibility for such grants and cooperative agreements.

(d) *List of Parties Excluded from Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs*. The System for Award Management (SAM) (previously this information was located within the Excluded Parties Listing System), maintained by the General Services Administration (GSA), is available at <https://www.sam.gov>. SAM encompasses the capabilities of the Central Contractor Registration (CCR)/ Federal Agency Registration (FedReg), Online Representations and Certifications Application (ORCA), and the Excluded Parties List System (EPLS), among other federal databases, and will be checked by DOC to ensure that an applicant is properly registered and eligible to receive a DOC financial assistance award.

(e) *Pre-Award Accounting System Surveys*. The Grants Office may require a pre-award survey of the applicant's financial management system in cases where the recommended applicant has had no prior Federal support, the operating unit has reason to question whether the financial management system meets Federal financial management standards, or the applicant is being considered for a high-risk designation.

(f) *Other*. DOC may conduct additional pre-award screenings in accordance with new public laws or administrative directives.

4. *No Obligation for Future Funding*. If the DOC obligates funding for an applicant's project, the DOC has no obligation to provide any additional future funding in connection with that award. Any amendment of an award to increase funding or to extend the period of performance is at the total discretion of the DOC.

5. *Pre-Award Activities*. If an applicant incurs any costs prior to receiving an award, it does so solely at its own risk of not being reimbursed by the Government. Notwithstanding any verbal or written assurance that may have been received, there is no obligation on the part of DOC to cover pre-award costs unless approved by the Grants Officer as part of the terms when the award is made, or as authorized for awards that support research by 15 CFR 14.25(e)(4).

6. *Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) Disclosure*. The FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552 and DOC regulations at 15 CFR part 4) sets forth the process and procedure the DOC follows to make requested

material, information, and records publicly available. Unless prohibited by law and to the extent required under the FOIA, contents of applications, proposals, and other information submitted by applicants may be released in response to FOIA requests. In accordance with 15 CFR 4.9, applicants and recipients should designate by appropriate markings, either at the time of submission or at a reasonable time thereafter, any portions of its submissions that it considers protected from disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4). In addition, Federal contractors may assist with program implementation and have access to materials applicants and recipients submit.

7. *False Statements*. A false statement on an application is grounds for denial or termination of an award, and/or possible punishment by a fine or imprisonment as provided in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

8. *Application Forms*. Unless the individual programs specify differently in notices announcing the availability of funding, the following forms, family of forms, and/or certifications are required, as applicable, for DOC grants and cooperative agreements: OMB Standard Forms (SF) SF-424, *Application for Federal Assistance*; SF-424A, *Budget Information—Non-Construction Programs*; SF-424B, *Assurances—Non-Construction Programs*; SF-424C, *Budget Information—Construction Programs*; SF-424D, *Assurances—Construction Programs*; SF-424 Family of Forms for Research and Related Programs; SF-424 Short Organizational Family; SF-424 Individual Form Family; and SF-424 Mandatory Family. In addition, Commerce Department (CD) Forms CD-511, *Certification Regarding Lobbying*; CD-512, *Certification Regarding Lobbying—Lower-Tier Covered Transactions*; and SF-LLL, *Disclosure of Lobbying Activities*, will be used as appropriate.

9. *Environmental Requirements*. Environmental impacts must be considered by Federal decision makers in their decisions whether to (1) approve a proposal for Federal assistance; (2) approve the proposal with mitigation; or (3) approve a different proposal/grant having less adverse environmental impacts. Federal environmental laws require that the funding agency initiate an early planning process that considers potential impacts that projects funded with Federal assistance may have on the environment. Applicants, recipients and subrecipients must comply with all environmental standards, to include those prescribed under the following

statutes and Executive Orders, and shall identify to the awarding agency any impact the award may have on the environment. The failure to do so is a basis for not selecting an application. In some cases, if additional information is required after an application is selected, funds can be withheld by the Grants Officer under a special award condition requiring the recipient to submit additional environmental compliance information sufficient to enable the DOC to make an assessment on any impacts that a project may have on the environment.

(a) *The National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.)*. Applicants for and recipients of Federal financial assistance awards are required to identify to the awarding agency any impact an award will have on the quality of the human environment, and assist the agency to comply with the National Environmental Policy Act, when the award activities remain subject to Federal authority and control. Applicants for and recipients of assistance may be requested to assist DOC in drafting an environmental impact assessment or environmental impact statement as part of a proposal if DOC determines such documentation is required.

(b) *National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.)*. Applicants for and recipients of Federal financial assistance awards are required to identify to the awarding agency any effects the award may have on properties included on or eligible for inclusion on the National Register of Historic Places. Applicants and recipients may also be requested to assist DOC in consulting with State or Tribal Historic Preservation Officers or other applicable interested parties necessary to identify, assess and resolve adverse effects to historic properties.

(c) *Executive Order 11988 ("Floodplain Management") and Executive Order 11990 ("Protection of Wetlands")*. Applicants and recipients must identify proposed actions located in Federally defined floodplains and wetlands to enable DOC to make a determination whether there is an alternative to minimize any potential harm.

(d) *Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.)*, *Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.) (Clean Water Act)*, and *Executive Order 11738 ("Providing for administration of the Clean Air Act and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act with respect to Federal contracts, grants or loans")*. Applicants and recipients must comply with the provisions of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.), Clean Water Act

(33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.), and Executive Order 11738. Recipients shall not use a facility that EPA has placed on the Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) List of Violating Facilities (this list is incorporated into the Excluded Parties List System which is incorporated into the SAM located at <https://www.sam.gov/portal/public/SAM/>) in performing any award that is nonexempt under subpart J of 2 CFR part 1532.

(e) *The Flood Disaster Protection Act (42 U.S.C. 4002 et seq.)*. Flood insurance, when available, is required for Federally assisted construction or acquisition in flood-prone areas.

(f) *The Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.)*. Applicants and recipients must identify any impact or activities that may involve a threatened or endangered species. Federal agencies have the responsibility for ensuring that a protected species or habitat does not incur adverse effects from actions under Federal assistance awards, and for conducting the required reviews under the Endangered Species Act, as applicable.

(g) *The Coastal Zone Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.)*. Funded projects must be consistent with a coastal state's approved management program for the coastal zone.

(h) *The Coastal Barriers Resources Act (16 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.)*. Only in certain circumstances can Federal funding be provided for actions within a Coastal Barrier System.

(i) *The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act (16 U.S.C. 1271 et seq.)*. This Act applies to awards that may affect existing or proposed components of the National Wild and Scenic Rivers system.

(j) *The Safe Drinking Water Act (42 U.S.C. 300 et seq.)*. This Act precludes Federal assistance for any project that the EPA determines may contaminate a sole source aquifer so as to threaten public health.

(k) *The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (42 U.S.C. 6901 et seq.)*. This act regulates the generation, transportation, treatment, and disposal of hazardous wastes, and also provides that recipients of Federal funds give preference in their procurement programs to the purchase of recycled products pursuant to EPA guidelines.

(l) *The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (Superfund) (42 U.S.C. 9601) and the Community Environmental Response Facilitation Act (42 U.S.C. 9601 et seq.)*. These requirements address responsibilities related to actual or threatened hazardous substance releases and environmental cleanup. There are also reporting and community

involvement requirements designed to ensure disclosure of the release or disposal of regulated substances and cleanup of hazards to state and local emergency responders.

(m) *Executive Order 12898 ("Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low Income Populations")*. This Order identifies and addresses adverse human health or environmental effects of programs, policies and activities on low income and minority populations.

10. *Limitation of Liability*. In no event will the Department of Commerce be responsible for proposal preparation costs if a program fails to receive funding or is cancelled because of other agency priorities. The publication of an announcement of funding availability does not oblige the agency to award any specific project or to obligate any available funds.

B. The following general provisions will apply to all DOC grant and cooperative agreement awards:

1. *Administrative Requirements and Cost Principles*. The uniform administrative requirements for all DOC grants and cooperative agreements are codified at 15 CFR part 14, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, Other Non-Profit, and Commercial Organizations," and at 15 CFR part 24, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements to State and Local Governments." The following list of cost principles, which are incorporated by reference in 15 CFR parts 14 and 24, are included in the DOC's grants and cooperative agreements: 2 CFR part 220 (OMB Circular A-21), "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions;" 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87), "Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments;" 2 CFR part 230 (OMB Circular A-122), "Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations;" Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 31.2, "Contracts with Commercial Organizations," codified at 48 CFR 31.2; and 45 CFR part 74, "Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development Under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals." Applicable administrative requirements and cost principles are identified in each award and are incorporated by reference into the award. Expenditures for any financial assistance award must be necessary to carry out the authorized project and be consistent with the applicable cost principles.

2. *Award Payments*. Advances will be limited to the minimum amounts necessary to meet immediate disbursement needs, but in no case

should advances exceed the amount of cash required for a 30-day period. Any advanced funds that are not disbursed in a timely manner and any applicable interest must be returned promptly to the DOC. Certain bureaus within the DOC use the Department of Treasury's Automated Standard Application for Payment (ASAP) system. In order to receive payments under ASAP, recipients will be required to enroll electronically in the ASAP system by providing their Federal Awarding Agency with pertinent information to begin the enrollment process, which allows them to use the on-line and Voice Response System (VRS) method of withdrawing funds from their ASAP established accounts. It is the recipient's responsibility to ensure that its contact information is correct. The funding agency must be provided a Point of Contact name, mailing address, email address, telephone number, Data Universal Number System (DUNS) identifier issued by the commercial company Dun & Bradstreet (D&B), and taxpayer identification number (TIN) to commence the enrollment process. In order to be able to complete the enrollment process, the recipient will need to identify a Head of Organization, an Authorizing Official, and a Financial Officer. It is very important that the recipient's banking data be linked to the funding agency's Agency Location Code in order to ensure proper payment under an award. For additional information on this requirement, prospective applicants should contact their Federal Awarding Agency.

### 3. Federal and Non-Federal Cost Sharing.

(a) Awards that include Federal and non-Federal cost sharing will incorporate a budget consisting of shared allowable costs. If actual allowable costs are less than the total approved budget, the Federal and non-Federal cost shares shall be calculated by applying the approved Federal and non-Federal cost share ratios to actual allowable costs. If actual allowable costs are greater than the total approved budget, the Federal share will not exceed the total Federal dollar amount authorized by the award.

(b) The non-Federal share, whether in cash or in-kind, is to be paid out at the same general rate as the Federal share. Exceptions to this requirement may be granted by the Grants Officer based on sufficient documentation demonstrating previously determined plans for or later commitment of cash or in-kind contributions. In any case, recipients must meet the cost share commitment over the life of the award.

4. *Budget Changes and Transfers Among Cost Categories.* When the terms of an award allow the recipient to transfer funds among approved direct cost categories, the transfer authority does not authorize the recipient to create new budget categories within an approved budget unless the Grants Officer has provided prior approval. In addition, the recipient will not be authorized at any time to transfer amounts budgeted for direct costs to the indirect costs line item or vice versa, without written prior approval of the Grants Officer.

### 5. *Indirect Costs and Facilities and Administrative Costs.*

(a) Indirect costs, or facilities and administrative (F&A) costs for educational institutions, will not be allowable charges against an award unless permitted under the award and specifically included as a line item in the award's approved budget.

(b) Excess indirect costs may not be used to offset unallowable direct costs.

(c) OMB established the cognizant agency concept, under which a single agency represents all others in dealing with grantees in common areas. The cognizant agency reviews and approves grantees' indirect cost rates. Approved rates must be accepted by other agencies, unless specific program regulations restrict the recovery of indirect costs. If indirect costs are permitted and the recipient would like to include indirect costs in its budget, but the recipient has not previously established an indirect cost rate with a Federal agency, the negotiation and approval of a rate will be subject to the procedures in the applicable cost principles and the following subparagraphs:

(1)(i) State, local, and Indian Tribal Governments; Educational Institutions; Hospitals and Non-Profit Organizations (Non-Commercial Organizations).

For those organizations for which the DOC is cognizant or has oversight, the DOC or its designee will either negotiate a fixed rate with carry-forward provisions or, in some instances, limit its review to evaluating the procedures described in the recipient's cost allocation plan. Indirect cost rates and cost allocation methodology reviews are subject to future audits to determine actual indirect costs.

(ii) Commercial Organizations

For commercial organizations, the term "cognizant federal agency" generally is defined as the agency that provides the largest dollar amount of negotiated contracts, including options. See 48 CFR part 42. If the only federal funds received by a commercial organization are DOC award funds, then

the DOC becomes the cognizant federal agency for the purpose of indirect cost negotiations. For those organizations for which the DOC is cognizant, DOC or its designee will negotiate a fixed rate with carry-forward provisions for the recipient. "Fixed rate" means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a pre-determined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of the subsequent period. DOC or its designee will negotiate indirect cost rates using the cost principles found in 48 CFR part 31, "Contract Cost Principles and Procedures." For guidance on how to put an indirect cost plan together go to: <http://www.dol.gov/oasam/programs/boc/costdeterminationguide/main.htm>.

(2) Within 90 days of the award date, the recipient shall submit to the address listed below documentation (indirect cost proposal, cost allocation plan, etc.) necessary to perform the review. The recipient shall provide the Grants Officer with a copy of the transmittal letter.

Office of Acquisition Management,  
U.S. Department of Commerce, 14th  
Street and Constitution Avenue NW.,  
Room 6412, Washington, DC 20230.

(3) The recipient can use the fixed rate proposed in the indirect cost plan until such time as the DOC provides a response to the submitted plan. Actual indirect costs must be calculated annually and adjustments made through the carry-forward provision used in calculating next year's rate. This calculation of actual indirect costs and the carry-forward provision is subject to audit. Indirect cost rate proposals must be submitted annually. Organizations that have previously established indirect cost rates must submit a new indirect cost proposal to the cognizant agency within six months after the close of each recipient's fiscal year.

(d) When the DOC is not the oversight or cognizant Federal agency, the recipient shall provide the Grants Officer with a copy of a negotiated rate agreement or a copy of the transmittal letter submitted to the cognizant or oversight Federal agency requesting a negotiated rate agreement.

(e) If the recipient fails to submit the required documentation to the DOC within 90 days of the award date, the recipient may be precluded from recovering any indirect costs under the award. If the DOC, oversight, or cognizant Federal agency determines there is good cause to excuse the recipient's delay in submitting the documentation, an extension of the 90-

day due date may be approved by the Grants Officer.

(f) The maximum dollar amount of allocable indirect costs for which the DOC will reimburse the recipient shall be the lesser of the line item amount for the Federal share of indirect costs contained in the approved budget of the award, or the Federal share of the total allocable indirect costs of the award based on the indirect cost rate approved by an oversight or cognizant Federal agency and applicable to the period in which the cost was occurred, provided the rate is approved on or before the award end date.

6. *Tax Refunds.* Refunds of Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA) or Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA) taxes received by a recipient during or after the project period must be refunded or credited to the DOC where the benefits were financed with Federal funds under the award. Recipients are required to contact the Grants Officer immediately upon receipt of these refunds. Recipients are required to refund portions of FICA/FUTA taxes determined to belong to the Federal Government, including refunds received after the project period ends.

7. *Other Federal Awards with Similar Programmatic Activities.* Recipients will be required to provide written notification to the Federal Program Officer and the Grants Officer in the event that, subsequent to receipt of the DOC award, other financial assistance is received to support or fund any portion of the scope of work incorporated into the DOC award. The DOC will not pay for costs that are funded by other sources.

8. *Non-Compliance with Award Provisions.* Failure to comply with any or all of the provisions of an award, or the requirements of this notice, may have a negative impact on future funding by the DOC and may be considered grounds for any or all of the following enforcement actions: establishment of an account receivable, withholding payments under any DOC awards to the recipient, changing the method of payment from advance to reimbursement only, or the imposition of other special award conditions, suspension of any DOC active awards, or termination of any DOC active awards.

9. *Prohibition Against Assignment by the Recipient.* Notwithstanding any other provision of an award, recipients may not transfer, pledge, mortgage, or otherwise assign an award, or any interest therein, or any claim arising thereunder, to any party or parties, banks, trust companies, or other financing or financial institutions

without the express written approval of the Grants Officer.

10. *Non-Discrimination Requirements.* There are several Federal statutes, regulations, Executive Orders, and policies relating to nondiscrimination. No person in the United States shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin, handicap, religion, age, or sex, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subject to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance. These requirements include but are not limited to:

(a) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000d *et seq.*) and the DOC's implementing regulations published at 15 CFR part 8 prohibiting discrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin under programs or activities receiving Federal financial assistance;

(b) Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq.*) and the DOC's implementing regulations at 15 CFR part 8a prohibiting discrimination on the basis of sex under Federally assisted education programs or activities;

(c) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 794) and the DOC's implementing regulations published at 15 CFR part 8b prohibiting discrimination on the basis of handicap under any program or activity receiving or benefiting from Federal assistance. The U.S. Department of Justice issued regulations implementing Title II of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) (28 CFR part 35; 75 FR 56164, as amended by 76 FR 13285) and Title III of the ADA (28 CFR part 36; 75 FR 56164, as amended by 76 FR 13286). These regulations adopt enforceable accessibility standards called the "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" (2010 Standards). For purposes of complying with DOC's regulations, the 2010 Standards are an acceptable alternative to the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS). DOC deems compliance with the 2010 Standards to be an acceptable means of complying with the Section 504 accessibility requirements for new construction and alteration projects under 15 CFR 8b.18(c), as follows:

(1) Public Recipients subject to Title II of the ADA may use either the 2010 Standards or UFAS where the physical construction or alternations commence on or after September 15, 2010 and before March 15, 2012 (see 28 CFR 35.151(c)(2));

(2) Private Recipients subject to Title III of the ADA may use either the 2010

Standards or UFAS if the date when the last application for a building permit or permit extension is certified to be complete by a State, county, or local government (or, in those jurisdictions where the government does not certify completion of applications, if the date when the last application for a building permit or permit extension is received by the State, county, or local government) is on or after September 15, 2010 and before March 15, 2012, or if no permit is required, if the start of physical construction or alterations occurs on or after September 15, 2010 and before March 15, 2012 (see 28 CFR 36.406(a)(2)); and

(3) In all cases, once a recipient selects an applicable ADA accessibility standard (*i.e.*, the 2010 Standards or UFAS), that standard must be applied to the entire facility. As of March 15, 2012, all new construction and alteration projects must comply with the 2010 Standards.

(d) The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 (42 U.S.C. 6101 *et seq.*) and the DOC's implementing regulations published at 15 CFR part 20 prohibiting discrimination on the basis of age in programs or activities receiving Federal financial assistance;

(e) The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 *et seq.*) prohibiting discrimination on the basis of disability under programs, activities, and services provided or made available by state and local governments or instrumentalities or agencies thereto, as well as public or private entities that provide public transportation;

(f) Title VIII of the Civil Rights Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 3601 *et seq.*), relating to nondiscrimination in the sale, rental or financing of housing;

(g) Parts II and III of Executive Order 11246, as amended by Executive Orders 11375 and 12086 requiring Federally assisted construction contracts to include the nondiscrimination provisions of sections 202 and 203 of that Executive Order and the Department of Labor's regulations at 41 CFR 60-1.4(b) implementing Executive Order 11246;

(h) Executive Order 13166 (August 11, 2000), "Improving Access to Services for Persons With Limited English Proficiency," requiring Federal agencies to examine the services provided, identify any need for services to those with limited English proficiency (LEP), and develop and implement a system to provide those services so LEP persons can have meaningful access to them, and DOC policy guidance issued on March 24, 2003 (68 FR 14180) to Federal financial assistance recipients on the Title VI prohibition against national

origin discrimination affecting LEP persons; and

(i) In recognition of the constitutionally-protected interest of religious organizations in making religiously-motivated employment decisions, Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, 42 U.S.C. 2000e *et seq.*, which expressly exempts religious organizations from the prohibition against discrimination on the basis of religion. See 42 U.S.C. 2000e-1(a).

11. Audits of Organizations Covered by OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" and the related Compliance Supplement. Recipients that are subject to OMB Circular A-133, and that expend \$500,000 or more in Federal awards in a fiscal year shall have an audit conducted for that year in accordance with the requirements of OMB Circular A-133, issued pursuant to the Single Audit Act of 1984 (Pub. L. 98-502), as amended by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (Pub. L. 104-156).

12. Unless otherwise specified in the terms and conditions of the award, in accordance with 15 CFR § 14.26(c) and (d), for-profit hospitals, commercial entities, and other organizations not required to follow the audit provisions of OMB Circular A-133 shall have a program-specific audit performed by an independent auditor when the federal share amount awarded is \$500,000 or more over the duration of the project period. An audit is required at least once every two years using the following schedule for audit report submission.

(a) For awards where the project period is less than two years, an audit is required within 90 days of the end of the project period to cover the entire project (the award close-out period is included in the 90 days);

(b) For awards with a two- or three-year project period, an audit is required within 90 days after the end of the first year to cover Year 1, which is the period of time when Federal funding is available for obligation by the recipient, and within 90 days of the end of the project period to cover Year 2 and Year 3 (if applicable) (the award close-out period is included in the 90 days); or

(c) For awards with a four- to five-year project period, an audit is required within 90 days after the end of the first year to cover Year 1, within 90 days after the end of the third year to cover Year 2 and Year 3, and within 90 days of the end of the project period to cover Year 4 for and Year 5 (if applicable) (the award close-out period is included in the 90 days).

Some DOC programs have specific audit guidelines that will be incorporated into the award. When DOC does not have a program-specific audit guide available for the program, the auditor will follow the requirements for a program-specific audit as described in OMB Circular A-133, subpart B, § 235. The Recipient may include a line item in the budget for the cost of the audit for approval by the Grants Officer.

13. Policies and Procedures for Resolution of Audit-Related Debts. The DOC has established policies and procedures for handling the resolution and reconsideration of financial assistance audits which have resulted in, or may result in, the establishment of a debt (account receivable) for financial assistance awards. These policies and procedures are contained in the **Federal Register** notice dated January 27, 1989. See 54 FR 4053. The policies and procedures also are provided in more detail in the *Department of Commerce Financial Assistance Standard Terms and Conditions*.

14. *Debts*. Any debts determined to be owed the Federal Government shall be paid promptly by the recipient. The DOC's debt collection procedures are set out in 15 CFR part 19. In accordance with 15 CFR § 19.1, delinquent debt is a debt that has not been paid by the date specified in the agency's initial written demand for payment or applicable agreement or instrument (including a post-delinquency payment agreement) unless other satisfactory payment arrangements have been made. In accordance with 15 CFR § 19.5 and 31 U.S.C. 3717, failure to pay a debt by the due date, or if there is no due date, within 30 days of the billing date, shall result in assessment of interest, penalties and administrative costs in accordance with the provisions of 31 U.S.C. 3717 and 31 CFR § 901.9. DOC entities will transfer any DOC debt that is more than 180 days delinquent to the Financial Management Service for debt collection services, a process known as "cross-servicing," pursuant 31 U.S.C. 3711(g), 31 CFR § 285.12 and 15 CFR § 19.9, and may result in the DOC taking further action as specified in the terms of the award. Funds for payment of a debt must not come from other federally sponsored programs. Verification that other Federal funds have not been used will be made, *e.g.*, during on-site visits and audits.

15. *Post-Award Discovery of Adverse Information*. After an award is made, if adverse information on a recipient or any key individual associated with a recipient is discovered which reflects

significantly and adversely on the recipient's responsibility, the Grants Officer may take the following actions:

(a) Require the recipient to correct the conditions.

(b) Consider the recipient to be "high risk" and unilaterally impose special award conditions to protect the Federal Government's interest.

(c) Suspend or terminate an active award. The recipient will be afforded due process while effecting such actions.

(d) Require the removal of personnel from association with the management of and/or implementation of the project and require Grants Officer approval of personnel replacements.

16. *Competition and Codes of Conduct*.

(a) Pursuant to the certification in Form SF-424B, paragraph 3, recipients must maintain written standards of conduct to establish safeguards to prohibit employees from using their positions for a purpose that constitutes or presents the appearance of a personal or organizational conflict of interest, or personal gain in the administration of this award and any subawards.

(b) Recipients must maintain written standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of subawards. No employee, officer, or agent shall participate in the selection, award, or administration of a subaward supported by Federal funds if such participation would cause a real or apparent conflict of interest. Such a conflict would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization in which he/she serves as an officer or which employs or is about to employ any of the parties mentioned in this section, has a financial or other interest in the organization selected or to be selected for a subaward. The officers, employees, and agents of the recipient may not solicit or accept anything of monetary value from subrecipients. However, the recipient may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of a recipient.

(c) All subawards will be made in a manner to provide, to the maximum extent practicable, open and free competition. Recipients must be alert to organizational conflicts of interest as well as other practices among subrecipients that may restrict or eliminate competition. In order to

ensure objective subrecipient performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, subrecipients that develop or draft work requirements, statements of work, or requests for proposals will be excluded from competing for such subawards.

(d) For purposes of the award, a financial interest may include employment, stock ownership, a creditor or debtor relationship, or prospective employment with an applicant. An appearance of impairment of objectivity could result from an organizational conflict where, because of other activities or relationships with other persons or entities, a person is unable or potentially unable to act in an impartial manner. It also could result from non-financial gain to the individual, such as benefit to reputation or prestige in a professional field.

17. *Small Businesses, Minority Business Enterprises and Women's Business Enterprises.* The DOC encourages recipients to utilize small businesses, minority business enterprises and women's business enterprises in contracts under financial assistance awards. The DOC's Minority Business Development Agency can assist recipients in matching qualified minority business enterprises with contract opportunities.

18. *Subaward and/or Contract to a Federal Agency.* Recipients, subrecipients, contractors, and/or subcontractors may not sub-grant or sub-contract any part of an approved project to any Federal department, agency, instrumentality, or employee thereof, without the prior written approval of the Grants Officer.

19. *Foreign Travel.* Recipients must comply with the provisions of the Fly America Act (49 U.S.C. 40118) and the implementing Federal Travel Regulations (41 CFR §§ 301-10.131 through 301-10.143). The Fly America Act requires that Federal travelers and others performing U.S. Government-financed air travel must use U.S. flag carriers, to the extent that service by such carriers is available. Foreign air carriers may be used only in specific instances, such as when a U.S. flag air carrier is unavailable, or use of U.S. flag carrier service will not accomplish the agency's mission. If a foreign air carrier is anticipated to be used for any portion of travel under a DOC financial assistance award, the recipient must receive prior approval from the Grants Officer.

20. *Purchase of American-Made Equipment and Products.* Recipients are hereby notified that they are encouraged, to the greatest extent practicable, to purchase American-made

equipment and products with funding provided under DOC financial assistance awards.

21. *Intellectual Property Rights.*

(a) *Inventions.* The rights to any invention made by a recipient under a DOC financial assistance award are determined by the Bayh-Dole Act, as amended (Pub. L. 96-517), as amended, and codified at 35 U.S.C. 200 *et seq.*, except as otherwise required by law. The specific rights and responsibilities are described in more detail in 37 CFR part 401 and in particular, in the standard patent rights clause in 37 CFR § 401.14, which is incorporated by reference into awards. Recipients of DOC financial assistance awards are required to submit their disclosures and elections electronically using the Interagency Edison extramural invention reporting system (iEdison) at [www.iedison.gov](http://www.iedison.gov). Recipients may obtain a waiver of this electronic submission requirement by providing to the DOC compelling reasons for allowing the submission of paper copies of reports related to inventions.

(b) *Patent Notification Procedures.* Pursuant to Executive Order 12889, the DOC is required to notify the owner of any valid patent covering technology whenever the DOC or its financial assistance recipients, without making a patent search, knows (or has demonstrable reasonable grounds to know) that technology covered by a valid United States patent has been or will be used without a license from the owner. To ensure proper notification, if the recipient uses or has used patented technology under this award without a license or permission from the owner, the recipient will be required to notify the Grants Officer. This notice does not necessarily mean that the government authorizes and consents to any copyright or patent infringement occurring under the financial assistance award.

(c) *Data, Databases, and Software.* The rights to any work produced or purchased under a DOC financial assistance award are determined by 15 CFR §§ 14.36, for State and Local Governments, or 24.34, for Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, Other Non-Profit, and Commercial Organizations, as applicable. Such works may include data, databases or software. The recipient owns any work produced or purchased under a DOC financial assistance award subject to DOC's right to obtain, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the work or authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the data for Federal Government purposes.

(d) *Copyright.* The recipient may copyright any work produced under a DOC financial assistance award subject to the DOC's royalty-free nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish or otherwise use the work, or authorize others to do so for Federal Government purposes. Works jointly authored by the DOC and recipient employees may be copyrighted but only the part authored by the recipient is protected because, under 17 U.S.C. § 105, works produced by Government employees are not copyrightable in the United States. On occasion, the DOC may require the recipient to transfer to DOC its copyright in a particular work for government purposes or when the DOC is undertaking the primary dissemination of the work. Ownership of copyright by the Federal Government through assignment is permitted by 17 U.S.C. 105.

22. *Seat Belt Use.* Pursuant to Executive Order 13043, recipients shall seek to encourage employees and contractors to enforce on-the-job seat belt policies and programs when operating recipient/company-owned, rented or personally owned vehicles.

23. *Research Involving Human Subjects.* All proposed research involving human subjects must be conducted in accordance with 15 CFR part 27, "Protection of Human Subject." No research involving human subjects is permitted under any DOC financial assistance award unless expressly authorized by the Grants Officer.

24. *Federal Employee Expenses.* Federal agencies are generally barred from accepting funds from a recipient to pay transportation, travel, or other expenses for any Federal employee. Use of award funds (Federal or non-Federal) or the recipient's provision of in-kind goods or services for the purposes of transportation, travel, or any other expenses for any Federal employee, may raise appropriation augmentation issues. In addition, DOC policy prohibits the acceptance of gifts, including travel payments for Federal employees, from recipients or applicants regardless of the source.

25. *Minority Serving Institutions (MSIs) Initiative.* Pursuant to Executive Orders 13555 ("White House Initiative on Educational Excellence for Hispanics"), 13270 ("Tribal Colleges and Universities"), and 13532 ("Promoting Excellence, Innovation, and Sustainability at Historically Black Colleges and Universities"), the DOC is strongly committed to broadening the participation of minority serving institutions (MSIs) in its financial assistance award programs. The DOC's goals include achieving full

participation of MSIs in order to advance the development of human potential, strengthen the Nation's capacity to provide high-quality education, and increase opportunities for MSIs to participate in and benefit from Federal financial assistance programs. The DOC encourages all applicants and recipients to include meaningful participation of MSIs. Institutions eligible to be considered MSIs are listed on the Department of Education's Web site.

26. *Access to Records.* The DOC, the Inspector General of the DOC, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, and, if appropriate, the State, shall have access to any pertinent books, documents, papers and records of the parties to a grant or cooperative agreement, whether written, printed, recorded, produced, or reproduced by any electronic, mechanical, magnetic or other process or medium, in order to make audits, inspections, excerpts, transcripts, or other examinations as authorized by law. An audit of an award may be conducted at any time.

27. *Research Misconduct.* The DOC adopts, and applies to financial assistance awards for research, the Federal Policy on Research Misconduct (Federal Policy) issued by the Executive Office of the President's Office of Science and Technology Policy on December 6, 2000 (65 FR 76260 (2000)). As provided for in the Federal Policy, research misconduct refers to the fabrication, falsification, or plagiarism in proposing, performing, or reviewing research, or in reporting research results. Research misconduct does not include honest errors or differences of opinion. Recipient organizations that conduct extramural research funded by DOC must foster an atmosphere conducive to the responsible conduct of sponsored research by safeguarding against and resolving allegations of research misconduct. Recipient organizations also have the primary responsibility to prevent, detect, and investigate allegations of research misconduct and, for this purpose, may rely on their internal policies and procedures, as appropriate, to do so. Federal award funds expended on an activity that is determined to be invalid or unreliable because of research misconduct may result in appropriate enforcement action under the award, up to and including award termination and possible suspension or debarment. The DOC requires that any allegation that contains sufficient information to proceed with an inquiry be submitted to the Grants Officer, who will also notify the OIG of such allegation. Once the

recipient organization has investigated the allegation, it will submit its findings to the Grants Officer. The DOC may accept the recipient's findings or proceed with its own investigation. The Grants Officer shall inform the recipient of the DOC's final determination.

28. *Intergovernmental Personnel Act of 1970 (42 U.S.C. 4728–4763).*

Recipients must comply with this Act relating to prescribed standards for merit systems for programs funded under one of the 19 statutes or regulations specified in Appendix A of the Office of Personnel Management Standards for a Merit System of Personnel Administration (5 CFR part 900, subpart F).

29. *Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4601 et seq.)* and the DOC's implementing regulations issued at 15 CFR part 11. These provide for fair and equitable treatment of persons displaced or whose property is acquired as a result of Federal or Federally-assisted programs. These requirements apply to all interests in real property acquired for project purposes regardless of Federal participation in purchases.

30. *Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention Act (42 U.S.C. 4801 et seq.)*. This Act prohibits the use of lead-based paint in construction or rehabilitation of residential structures.

31. *Hatch Act (5 U.S.C. 1501–1508 and 7324–7328)*. This Act limits the political activities of employees or officers of State or local governments whose principal employment activities are funded in whole or in part with Federal funds.

32. *Labor standards for Federally-assisted construction subagreements (wage guarantees)*. Recipients must comply, as applicable, with the provisions of the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a-7); the Copeland Act (40 U.S.C. 276c and 18 U.S.C. 874); and the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–333).

33. *Care and Use of Live Vertebrate Animals*. Recipients must comply with the Laboratory Animal Welfare Act of 1966 (Pub. L. 89–544), as amended (7 U.S.C. 2131 et seq.) (animal acquisition, transport, care, handling, and use in projects) and implementing regulations, 9 CFR parts 1, 2, and 3; the Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.); Marine Mammal Protection Act (16 U.S.C. 1361 et seq.) (taking possession, transport, purchase, sale, export or import of wildlife and plants); the Nonindigenous Aquatic Nuisance Prevention and Control Act (16 U.S.C. 4701 et seq.) (ensure preventive measures are taken or that probable

harm of using species is minimal if there is an escape or release); and all other applicable statutes pertaining to the care, handling, and treatment of warm blooded animals held for research, teaching, or other activities supported by Federal financial assistance. No research involving vertebrate animals is permitted under any DOC financial assistance award unless authorized by the Grants Officer.

34. *Publications, Videos, and Acknowledgment of Sponsorship.* Publication of the results or findings in appropriate professional journals and production of videos or other media is encouraged as an important method of recording, reporting and otherwise disseminating information and expanding public access to federally-funded projects (e.g., scientific research). The recipient may be required to submit a copy of any publication materials, including but not limited to print, recorded or Internet materials to the funding agency. When releasing information related to a funded project the recipient must include a statement that the project or effort undertaken was or is sponsored by DOC. The recipient is also responsible for assuring that every publication of material based on, developed under or otherwise produced under a DOC award, except scientific articles or papers appearing in scientific, technical or professional journals, contains the following disclaimer or other disclaimer approved by the Grants Officer: "This [report/video/etc.] was prepared by [recipient name] using Federal funds under award [number] from [name of operating unit], U.S. Department of Commerce. The statements, findings, conclusions, and recommendations are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the [name of operating unit] or the U.S. Department of Commerce."

35. *Homeland Security Presidential Directive—12.* If the performance of a grant award requires recipient organization personnel to have routine access to Federally-controlled facilities and/or Federally-controlled information systems (for purpose of this term "routine access" is defined as more than 180 days), such personnel must undergo the personal identity verification credential process. In the case of foreign nationals, the DOC will conduct a check with U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services' (USCIS) Verification Division, a component of the Department of Homeland Security (DHS), to ensure the individual is in a lawful immigration status and that he or she is eligible for employment within the United States. Any items or services delivered under a financial assistance award shall comply

with the DOC personal identity verification procedures that implement Homeland Security Presidential Directive—12, “Policy for a Common Identification Standard for Federal Employees and Contractors,” FIPS PUB 201, and OMB Memorandum M–05–24. The recipient shall ensure that its subrecipients and contractors (at all tiers) performing work under this award comply with the requirements contained in this term. The Grants Officer may delay final payment under an award if the subrecipient or contractor fails to comply with the requirements listed in the term below. The recipient shall insert the following terms in all subawards and contracts when the subaward recipient or contractor is required to have routine physical access to a Federally-controlled facility or routine access to a Federally-controlled information system:

(a) The subrecipient or contractor shall comply with DOC personal identity verification procedures identified in the subaward or contract that implement Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12 (HSPD–12), Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Guidance M–05–24, as amended, and Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS PUB) Number 201, as amended, for all employees under this subaward or contract who require routine physical access to a Federally-controlled facility or routine access to a Federally-controlled information system.

(b) The subrecipient or contractor shall account for all forms of Government-provided identification issued to the subrecipient or contractor employees in connection with performance under this subaward or contract. The subrecipient or contractor shall return such identification to the issuing agency at the earliest of any of the following, unless otherwise determined by DOC: (1) When no longer needed for subaward or contract performance; (2) upon completion of the subrecipient or contractor employee’s employment; (3) upon completion of the subaward or contract.

36. Compliance with Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security Export Administration Regulations.

(a) This clause applies to the extent that a financial assistance award involves access to export-controlled items.

(b) In performing a financial assistance award, the recipient may gain access to items subject to export controls (export-controlled items) under the Export Administration Regulations (EAR). The recipient is responsible for

compliance with all applicable laws and regulations regarding export-controlled items, including the EAR’s deemed exports and reexport provisions. The recipient shall establish and maintain effective export compliance procedures at DOC and non-DOC facilities throughout performance of the financial assistance award. At a minimum, these export compliance procedures must include adequate controls relating to physical, verbal, visual and electronic access to export-controlled items, including by foreign nationals.

(c) Definitions:

(1) **Export-controlled items.** Items (commodities, software or technology) that are subject to the EAR (15 CFR §§ 730–774), implemented by the DOC’s Bureau of Industry and Security. These are generally known as “dual-use” items, items with military and commercial application.

(2) **Deemed Export/Reexport.** The EAR defines a deemed export as a release of export-controlled items (specifically, technology or source code) to a foreign national in the U.S. Such release is “deemed” to be an export to the home country of the foreign national. 15 CFR § 734.2(b)(2)(ii). A release may take the form of visual inspection, oral exchange of information, or the application abroad of knowledge or technical experience acquired in the U.S. If such a release occurs abroad, it is considered a deemed reexport to the foreign national’s home country. Licenses from DOC may be required for deemed exports or reexports.

(d) The recipient shall control access to all export-controlled items that it possesses or that comes into its possession in performance of a financial assistance award, to ensure that access to, or release of, such items are restricted, or licensed, as required by applicable Federal laws, Executive Orders, and/or regulations, including the EAR.

(e) As applicable, recipient personnel and associates at DOC sites will be informed of any procedures to identify and protect export-controlled items.

(f) To the extent the recipient wishes to provide foreign nationals with access to export-controlled items, the recipient shall be responsible for obtaining any necessary licenses, including licenses required under the EAR for deemed exports or deemed reexports.

(g) Nothing in the terms of this financial assistance award is intended to change, supersede, or waive the requirements of applicable Federal laws, Executive Orders or regulations.

(h) Compliance with this term will not satisfy any legal obligations the

recipient may have regarding items that may be subject to export controls administered by other agencies such as the Department of State, which has jurisdiction over exports of munitions items subject to the International Traffic in Arms Regulations (ITAR) (22 CFR §§ 120–130), including releases of such items to foreign nationals.

(i) The recipient shall include this term, including this paragraph, in all lower tier transactions (subawards, contracts, and subcontracts) under this financial assistance award that may involve access to export-controlled items.

37. The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 (22 U.S.C. 7104(g)), as amended, and the implementing regulations at 2 CFR part 175. The Trafficking Victims Protection Act of 2000 authorizes termination of financial assistance provided to a private entity, without penalty to the Federal Government, if the recipient or subrecipient engages in certain activities related to trafficking in persons. The DOC incorporates the award term required by 2 CFR § 175.15(b) into all financial assistance awards. See <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2012-title2-vol1/pdf/CFR-2012-title2-vol1-sec175-15.pdf> for the full award term.

38. The Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 (Pub. L. 109–282; codified at 31 U.S.C. 6101 note) (FFATA).

(a) The FFATA requires information on Federal awards (Federal financial assistance and expenditures) be made available to the public via a single, searchable Web site. This information is available at [USASpending.gov](http://USASpending.gov). Recipients and subrecipients must include the following required data elements in their application:

- (1) Name of entity receiving award;
- (2) Award amount;
- (3) Transaction type, funding agency, Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance Number, and descriptive award title;
- (4) Location of: entity, primary location of performance (City/State/Congressional District/Country; and
- (5) Unique identifier of entity.

(b) Reporting Subawards and Executive Compensation. Prime grant recipients awarded a new Federal grant greater than or equal to \$25,000 on or after October 1, 2010, other than those funded by the Recovery Act, are subject to FFATA subaward reporting requirements as outlined in 2 CFR part 170. The prime recipient is required to file a FFATA subaward report by the end of the month following the month in which the prime recipient awards any sub-grant greater than or equal to \$25,000. See Public Law 109–282, as

amended by section 6202(a) of Public Law 110–252 (see 31 U.S.C. 6101 note). The DOC incorporates the award term required by Appendix A of 2 CFR part 170 into all financial assistance awards. See <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/CFR-2011-title2-vol1/pdf/CFR-2011-title2-vol1-part170-appA.pdf> for the full award term.

(c) *Central Contractor Registration (CCR) and Universal Identifier Requirements*. Unless an exemption applies under 2 CFR § 25.110, applicants for federal financial assistance awards must be registered in the Central Contractor Registration (CCR) prior to submitting an application for financial assistance, maintain an active CCR registration with current information at all times during which it has an active Federal award or an application under consideration by an agency, and provide its DUNS number in each application it submits to the agency. For this purpose, the DOC incorporates the award term required by Appendix A of 2 CFR part 25 into all financial assistance awards. See <http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/text-idx?c=ecfr&SID=d1bbde1c530112e7133a03bb635bf2fe&rgn=div9&view=text&node=2:1.1.3.3.3.1.14.1&idno=2> for the full award term.

C. In limited circumstances (e.g., when required by statute), the DOC will issue a **Federal Register** notice, in addition to a notice on [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov), announcing the availability of Federal funds for each DOC competitive financial assistance program. Unless statute or regulation requires otherwise, such **Federal Register** notices will contain only the following program-specific information: Summary description of program; deadline date for receipt of applications; addresses for submission of applications; information contacts (including electronic access); the amount of funding available; statutory authority; the applicable Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number(s); eligibility requirements; cost-sharing or matching requirements; Intergovernmental Review requirements; evaluation criteria used by the merit reviewers; selection procedures, including funding priorities/selection factors/policy factors to be applied by the selecting official; and administrative and national policy requirements; and information about how to access the full program notice at [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov).

D. The DOC follows the uniform format for an announcement of Federal Funding Opportunity (FFO) for discretionary grants and cooperative agreements established by OMB in a guidance published in the **Federal**

**Register** (see 68 FR 37370 (June 23, 2003) and 68 FR 58146 (October 8, 2003)). FFOs published by DOC are available at [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov). Applicants are strongly encouraged and in some cases required to apply through [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov). It can take up to two weeks to register with [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov) if problems are encountered. Registration is required only once. Applicants should consider the time needed to register with [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov), and should begin the registration process well in advance of the application due date if they have never registered. Applicants should allow themselves adequate time to submit the proposal through [www.grants.gov](http://www.grants.gov), as the deadline for submission generally cannot be extended and there is significant potential for human or computer error during the electronic submission process. After registering, it may take several days or longer from the initial log-on before a new Grants.gov system user can submit an application. Only authorized individual(s) will be able to submit the application, and the system may need time to process a submitted proposal. Applicants should save and print the proof of submission they receive from Grants.gov, which may take up to two days to receive.

#### **Executive Order 12866**

This notice has been determined to be “not significant” for purposes of Executive Order 12866, “Regulatory Planning and Review.”

#### **Administrative Procedure Act and Regulatory Flexibility Act**

Because notice and comment are not required under 5 U.S.C. 553, or any other law, for this notice relating to public property, loans, grants benefits or contracts (5 U.S.C. 553(a)), a Regulatory Flexibility Analysis is not required and has not been prepared for this notice.

#### **Executive Order 13132 (Federalism)**

It has been determined that this notice does not contain policies with Federalism implications as that term is defined in Executive Order 13132.

#### **Paperwork Reduction Act**

This notice does not impose any new reporting or recordkeeping requirements under the Paperwork Reduction Act. Notwithstanding any other provisions of the law, no person is required to respond to, nor shall any person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection-of-information, subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act (PRA), 44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.*, unless that collection of information displays a currently valid

OMB control number. The use of the following family of forms has been approved by OMB under the following control numbers: (1) SF–424 Family: 0348–0041, 0348–0044, 4040–0003, and 4040–0004; (2) SF–424 Research and Related Family: 4040–0001; SF–424 Individual Family: 4040–0005; (3) SF–424 Mandatory Family: 4040–0002; and (4) SF–424 Short Organizational Family: 4040–0003. The use of Form SF–LLL is approved by OMB under the control numbers 0348–0046.

#### **Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance**

This notice affects all of the grant and cooperative agreement programs funded by the DOC. The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance can be accessed on the Internet at: <http://www.cfda.gov>.

#### **List of Subjects**

Accounting, Administrative practice and procedures, Grants administration, Grant programs—economic development, Grant programs—oceans, atmosphere and fisheries management, Grant programs—minority businesses, Grant programs—technology, Grant programs—telecommunications, Grant programs—international, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

Dated: December 4, 2012.

**Barry E. Berkowitz**,

*Senior Procurement Executive and Director of Acquisition Management.*

[FR Doc. 2012–30228 Filed 12–14–12; 8:45 am]

**BILLING CODE P**

## **DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE**

### **Economic Development Administration**

#### **Notice of Petitions by Firms for Determination of Eligibility To Apply for Trade Adjustment Assistance**

**AGENCY:** Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce.

**ACTION:** Notice and Opportunity for Public Comment.

Pursuant to Section 251 of the Trade Act 1974, as amended (19 U.S.C. 2341 *et seq.*), the Economic Development Administration (EDA) has received petitions for certification of eligibility to apply for Trade Adjustment Assistance from the firms listed below. Accordingly, EDA has initiated investigations to determine whether increased imports into the United States of articles like or directly competitive with those produced by each of these firms contributed importantly to the total or partial separation of the firm’s workers, or threat thereof, and to a